## Packing List

This package contains the following items:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>X-REF Books and Notes</td>
<td>A0021LL/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you have any questions, please call 1-800-282-2732.
The X-Ref to Apple II Programming Books is a compilation of the glossaries and indexes from the books and references listed below. It is intended to be a “look here first” book for helping you find the definition to terms used in any of these sources of technical information. In addition, the compiled index will help you find what you are looking for across the entire suite.

The books covered, and the initials used to represent them are:

- Apple IIc Technical Reference
- Apple IIe Technical Reference
- Apple IIgs Firmware Reference
- Apple IIgs Hardware Reference
- ProDOS 16 Technical Reference
- Programmer’s Introduction to the Apple IIgs
- Technical Introduction to the Apple IIgs
- Apple IIgs Toolbox Reference (treated as a whole)
- Technical Notes
  - Apple IIe Tech Notes
  - Apple IIc Tech Notes
  - Apple IIgs Tech Notes
  - Apple II Miscellaneous Tech Notes
  - AppleTalk Tech Notes
  - GS/OS Tech Notes
  - ImageWriter Tech Notes
  - Memory Expansion Card
  - Mouse Tech Notes
  - ProDOS 8 Tech Notes
  - Pascal Tech Notes
  - SmartPort Tech Notes
  - UniDisk 3.5 Tech Notes

The X-Ref contains two sections. The first is the complete glossary from all of the books listed. The second section is the combined index from all of the above technical references.

I hope that you find the X-Ref to be a valuable tool for your programming the Apple II line of computers.

Tom Chavez
Product Manager,
X-Ref (Cross-Reference) to Apple II Programming Books
Glossary

128K Apple II: Any standard Apple II with both main and auxiliary 64K banks of RAM. That includes all models of the Apple IIc and some models of the Apple Ile, including those with the Extended 80-Column Text Card installed. The Apple IIIGS is not a 128K Apple II in the strict sense, even though it includes both 64K banks of RAM and is capable of running programs designed for a 128K Apple II. (GSH, GST)

320 mode: An Apple IIIGS video display mode, 320 pixels horizontally by 200 pixels vertically. (GSTR)

640 mode: An Apple IIIGS video display mode, 640 pixels horizontally by 200 pixels vertically. (GSTR)

64K Apple II: Any standard Apple II that has at least 64K of RAM. That includes the Apple IIc, the Apple Ile, and an Apple II or Apple II Plus with 48K of RAM and the Apple Language Card installed. (GSH, GST)

6502: The microprocessor used in the Apple II, in the Apple II Plus, and in early models of the Apple Ile. The 6502 is an MOS device with 8-bit data registers and 16-bit address registers. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

65816 assembly language: A low-level programming language written for the 65816 family of microprocessors. (GSTR)

65C02: A CMOS version of the 6502; the microprocessor used in the enhanced Apple Ile, the extended keyboard Ile, and the Apple IIc. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

65C816: The microprocessor used in the Apple IIIGS. The 65C816 is a CMOS device with 16-bit data registers and 24-bit address registers. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR)

68000: The microprocessor used in the Macintosh and Macintosh Plus. The 68000 has 32-bit data and address registers. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR)

80-column text card: A peripheral card that allows the Apple II, Apple II Plus, and Apple IIe computers to display text in 80 columns (in addition to the standard 40 columns). (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

80/40-column switch: A switch that controls the maximum number of columns or characters across the screen. A television can legibly display a maximum of 40 characters across the screen, whereas a video monitor can display 80 characters. (CTR, ETR)

A register: See accumulator. (GSTR, PI)

absolute: Characteristic of a load segment or other program code that must be loaded at a specific address in memory and never moved. Compare relocatable, position-independent. (GSTR, PI, P16)

absolute addressing: An addressing mode in which instruction operands are interpreted as literal addresses. (GSTR, PI)

absolute clamps: Values that establish the minimum and maximum X and Y coordinates for alternative pointing devices. (GSTR)

access (or access byte): An attribute of a ProDOS file that controls whether the file may be read from, written to, renamed, or backed up. (GSTR, PI)

access byte: An attribute of a ProDOS 16 file that determines what types of operations, such as reading or writing, may be performed on the file. (P16)

accumulator: The register in a computer's central processor or microprocessor where most computations are performed. Also called A register. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)
**ACIA:** Abbreviation for Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter, a type of communications IC used in some Apple computers. An ACIA converts data from parallel to serial form and vice versa. It handles serial transmission and reception and RS-232-C signals under the control of its internal registers, which can be set and changed by firmware or software. Compare SCC. (CTR, ETR, GS, GSH, GST)

**acronym:** A word formed from the initial letters of a name or phrase, such as ROM (from read-only memory). (CTR, ETR, GST)

**activate:** To make active. A control or window may be activated. Compare enable. (GSTR, PI)

**activate event:** A window event that occurs when a window is made either active or inactive. (GSTR, PI)

**active:** Able to respond to the user's mouse or keyboard actions. Controls and windows that are active are displayed differently from inactive items. (GSTR, PI)

**ADB:** See Apple DeskTop Bus. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI)

**ADB commands:** Commands that are issued to the Apple Desktop Bus. These are not the same as Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set routines; rather, the tool set routines often include an ADB command as a parameter. The Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set then interprets and issues the ADB command. (GSTR)

**ADC:** See analog-to-digital converter. (CTR, GST)

**address:** A number that specifies the location of a single byte of memory. Addresses can be given as decimal or hexadecimal integers. A 64K system has addresses ranging from 0 to 65535 (in decimal) or from $0000$ to $FFFF$ (in hexadecimal). The Apple II GS has addresses ranging from 0 to 16,777,215 (decimal) or from $00$ 00 00 to $FF$ FF FF (hexadecimal). A complete address consists of a 4-bit bank number ($00$ to $FF$) followed by a 16-bit address within that bank ($00$ 00 to $FF$ FF). The letter x in an address stands for all possible values for that digit. For example, $Dxxx$ means all the addresses from $D000$ through $DFFF$. (CTR, ETR, GS, GSH, P16)

**address bus:** The bus that carries addresses from the CPU to components under its control. (PI)

**advanced linker (APW):** One aspect of the linker supplied with APW. The operation of the advanced linker is programmable. Compare standard linker. (PI)

**alert:** A warning or report of an error in the form of an alert box, a sound from the computer's speaker, or both. (GSTR, PI)

**alert box:** A special type of dialog box that appears on the screen to give a warning or to report an error message during use of an application. (GSTR, PI)

**alert sound:** A sound generated by a sound procedure that emits a tone or sequence of tones when the user is to be alerted of a condition. (GSTR)

**alert stage:** One of four stages that correspond to consecutive occurrences of an alert. (GSTR)

**alert template:** A data structure that contains an alert ID, a RECT determining the alert window's size and location, information about what should happen at each stage of the alert, and a list of pointers to the item templates. (GSTR)

**alert window:** The window in which an alert box appears. One of the two predefined window formats. Compare document window. (GSTR, PI)
algorithm: A step-by-step procedure for solving a problem or accomplishing a task. (CTR, ETR)

alternative pointing devices: A device, such as a graphics tablet or trackball, used instead of the mouse. (GSTR)

American Simplified Keyboard: See Dvorak keyboard. (CTR, ETR, GST)

American Standard Code for Information Interchange: See ASCII. (GST)

analog: (adj) Varying smoothly and continuously over a range, rather than changing in discrete jumps. For example, a conventional 12-hour clock face is an analog device that shows the time of day by the continuously changing position of the clock’s hands. Compare digital. (CTR, ETR, GST)

analog data: Data in the form of continuously variable quantities. Compare digital data. (CTR, ETR)

analog RGB: A type of color video monitor that accepts separate analog signals for the red, green, and blue color primaries. The intensity of each primary can vary continuously, making possible many shades and tints of color. Compare TTL RGB. (GSH, GST, PI)

analog signal: A signal that varies continuously over time, rather than being sent and received in discrete intervals. Compare digital signal. (CTR, ETR, GST)

analog-to-digital converter (ADC): A device that converts quantities from analog to digital form. For example, computer hand controls convert the position of the control dial (an analog quantity) into a discrete number (a digital quantity) that changes stepwise even when the dial is turned smoothly. (CTR, ETR, GST)

AND: A logical operator that produces a true result if both its operands are true, and a false result if either or both its operands are false. Compare OR, NOT, exclusive OR. (CTR, ETR)

ANSI: Acronym for American National Standards Institute, which sets standards for many technical fields and is the most common standard for computer terminals. (CTR, ETR)

Apple Desktop Bus (ADB): An input bus, with its own protocol and electrical characteristics, that provides a method of connecting input devices such as keyboards and mouse devices to personal computers. (GSF, GSH, GST, PI)

Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set: The Apple IIIGS tool set that facilitates an application’s interaction with devices connected to the Apple Desktop Bus. (GSTR, PI)

Apple II: The first Apple computer. It was built in a garage in California by Steve Jobs and Steve Wozniak. (CTR, ETR)

Apple II: A family of computers, including the original Apple II, the Apple II Plus, the Apple IIe, the Apple IIc, and the Apple IIGS. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

Apple II Pascal: A software system for the Apple II family that lets you create and execute programs written in the Pascal programming language. Apple II Pascal was adapted by Apple Computer from the University of California, San Diego, Pascal Operating System (UCSD Pascal). (CTR, ETR, GST)

Apple II Plus: A personal computer in the Apple II family with expansion slots that allow the user to enhance the computer's capabilities with peripheral and auxiliary cards. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

Apple IIc: A transportable personal computer in the Apple II family, with a disk drive, serial ports, and 80-column display capability built in. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

Apple IIe: A personal computer in the Apple II family with seven expansion slots and an auxiliary memory slot that allow the user to enhance the computer’s capabilities with peripheral memory and video enhancement cards. (CTR, ETR, GSTR, PI)

Apple IIe 80-Column Text Card: A peripheral card that plugs into the Apple IIe’s auxiliary memory slot and enables the computer to display text as either 40 or 80 characters per line. (CTR, ETR, GST)
Apple IIe Extended 80-Column Text Card: A peripheral card that plugs into the Apple IIe's auxiliary memory slot and allows the computer to display either 40 or 80 characters per line while extending the computer's memory capacity by 64K. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Apple IIGS: The most advanced computer in the Apple II family. It features expanded memory, advanced sound and graphics, and the Apple IIGS Toolbox of programming routines. The Apple IIGS uses a 16-bit microprocessor and has 256K of RAM. It has slots like the Apple IIe and ports like the Apple IIc, and contains a 15-voice custom sound chip. (CTR, ETR, PI, GSTR)

Apple IIGS Debugger: A 65816 machine language code debugger for the Apple IIGS computer. (PI)

Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop: The development environment for the Apple IIGS computer. It consists of a set of programs that facilitate the writing, compiling, and debugging of Apple IIGS applications. See APW. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

Apple IIGS Toolbox: An extensive set of routines that facilitates writing desktop applications and provides easy program access to many Apple IIGS hardware and firmware features. Functions within the toolbox are grouped into tool sets. (GSTR, PI)

Apple III: An Apple computer; part of the Apple II family. The Apple III offered a built-in disk drive and built-in RS-232-C (serial) port. Its memory was expandable to 256K. (CTR, ETR)

Apple key: A modifier key on the Apple IIGS keyboard, marked with both an Apple icon and a spinner, the icon used on the equivalent key on some Macintosh keyboards. It performs the same functions as the Open Apple key on standard Apple II machines. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

Applesoft BASIC: The Apple II dialect of the BASIC programming language. An interpreter for creating and executing Applesoft BASIC programs is built into the firmware of computers in the Apple II family. See also BASIC, Integer BASIC. (CTR, ETR, GSF)

AppleTalk: Apple's local-area network for Apple II and Macintosh personal computers and the LaserWriter and ImageWriter II printers. Like the Macintosh, the Apple IIGS has the AppleTalk interface built in. (GSF)

AppleTalk connector: A piece of equipment—consisting of a connection box, a short cable, and an 8-pin miniature DIN connector—that enables an Apple IIGS to be part of an AppleTalk network. (GSF, GSH, GST)

application: A stand-alone program that performs a specific function, such as word processing, drawing, or telecommunications. Compare, for example, desk accessory, device driver. (GSTR, PI)

application event: Any of four types of events available for applications to define and respond to as desired. (GSTR)

application prefix: The ProDOS 16 prefix number 1. It specifies the directory of the currently running application. (PI, GSTR)

application program (or application): (1) A program that performs a specific task useful to the computer user, such as word processing, data base management, or graphics. Compare controlling program, shell application, system program. (2) On the Apple IIGS, a program that accesses ProDOS 16 and the Toolbox directly, and that can be called or exited via the QUIT call. ProDOS 16 applications are file type $B3. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, P16)

application window: A window in which an application's document appears. (GSTR, PI)

application-defined event: Any of four types of events available for applications to define and respond to as desired. (PI)

APW: See Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop. (GSF, GSH, PI, P16)
APW (Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop): A multilanguage development environment for writing Apple IIGS desktop applications. (GSTR)

APW Assembler: The 65816 assembly-language assembler provided with the Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop. (GSTR, PI)

APW C Compiler: The C-language compiler provided with the Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop. (GSTR, PI)

APW Editor: The program within the Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop that allows you to enter, modify, and save source files for all APW languages. (PI)

APW Linker: The linker supplied with Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop. (PI, P16)

APW Shell: The programming environment of the Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop. It provides facilities for file manipulation and program execution, and supports shell applications. (GSTR, PI)

APW utility program: Any of various Shell applications supplied with the Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop that function as APW Shell commands. (PI)

arbitrary mode: In the List Manager, a selection mode that allows the user to select members in a list without deselecting already-selected members. (GSTR)

arc: A portion of an oval; one of the fundamental shapes drawn by QuickDraw II. (GSTR, PI)

argument: A value on which a function or statement operates; it can be a number or a variable. For example, in the BASIC statement VTAB 10, the number 10 is the argument. Compare operand. (ETR)

arithmetic expression: A combination of numbers and arithmetic operators (such as 3 + 5) that indicates some operation to be carried out. (CTR, ETR)

arithmetic operator: An operator, such as +, that combines numeric values to produce a numeric result. Compare logical operator, relational operator. (CTR, ETR)

ascent: In a font, the distance between the base line and the ascent line. (GSTR, PI)

ascent line: A horizontal line that coincides with the tops of the tallest characters in a font. See also base line, descent line. (GSTR, PI)

ASCII: Acronym for American Standard Code for Information Interchange, pronounced "ASK-ee." A code in which the numbers from 0 to 127 stand for text characters. ASCII code is used to represent text inside a computer and to transmit text between computers or between a computer and a peripheral device. Compare EBCDIC. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

aspect ratio: The ratio of an image's width to its height. For example, a standard video display has an aspect ratio of 4:3. (GSH, GST)

assembler: A language translator that converts a program written in assembly language into an equivalent program in machine language. The opposite of a disassembler. Compare compiler. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST, PI, P16)

assembly language: A low-level programming language in which individual machine-language instructions are written in a symbolic form that's easier to understand than machine language itself. Each assembly-language instruction produces one machine-language instruction. See also machine language. (CTR, ETR, GST)

AsyncADBReceive completion routine: Used in conjunction with the ADB Tool Set routine AsyncADBReceive, the completion routine obtains ADB data from a buffer. Compare SRQ list completion routine. (GSTR)

asynchronous: Not synchronized by a mutual timing signal or clock. Compare synchronous. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter: See ACIA. (GST)
asynchronous transmission: A method of data transmission in which the receiving and sending devices don't share a common timer, and no timing data is transmitted. Each information character is individually synchronized, usually by the use of start and stop bits. The time interval between characters isn't necessarily fixed. Compare synchronous transmission. (CTR, ETR)

attributes word: Determines how memory blocks are allocated and maintained. Most of the attributes are defined at allocation time and can't be changed after that; other attributes can be modified after allocation. (GSTR, PI)

auto-key: A keyboard feature and an event type, in which a key being held down continuously is interpreted as a rapid series of identical keystrokes. (GSTR, PI)

auxID: A subfield of the User ID. An application may place any value it wishes into the auxID field. (GSTR, PI, P16)

auxiliary slot: The special expansion slot inside the Apple Ile used for the Apple Ile 80-Column Text Card or Extended 80-Column Text Card, and also for the RGB monitor card. The slot is labeled "AUX. CONNECTOR" on the circuit board. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

auxiliary type: A secondary classification of ProDOS files. A file's auxiliary type field may contain information of use to the applications that read it. Compare file type. (GSTR, PI)

available font: A font that the Font Manager can use because the font is the ROM font, or a font in the FONTS subdirectory, or a font that the application has added with the Font Manager routine AddFontVar. (GSTR)

back panel: The rear surface of the computer, which includes the power switch, the power connector, and connectors for peripheral devices. (CTR, GST)

background: The pixels within a character or other screen object that are not part of the object itself. (GSTR, PI)

background color: The color of background pixels in text; by default it is black. (GSTR, PI)

background pattern: The pattern QuickDraw II uses to erase objects on the screen. (GSTR, PI)

background pixels: In a character image, the pixels that are not part of the character itself. (GSTR, PI)

background printing: Printing from one application while another application is running. (GSF)

background procedure: A procedure run by the Print Manager whenever the Print Manager has directed output to the printer and is waiting for the printer to finish. (GSTR, PI)

backup bit: A bit in a file's access byte that tells backup programs whether the file has been altered since the last time it was backed up. (PI, P16)

bandwidth: The range of frequencies a device can handle. Bandwidth and maximum data transfer rate are directly proportional. For example, a video monitor's greater bandwidth allows it to display more information per scan frame than most home television sets can. To display 80 columns of text, a monitor should have a bandwidth of at least 12 MHz. (CTR)

bank: A 64K (65,536-byte) portion of the Apple IIGS internal memory. An individual bank is specified by the value of one of the 65C816 microprocessor's bank registers. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

bank $00: The first bank of memory in the Apple IIGS. In emulation mode, it is equivalent to main memory in an Apple Ile or Apple IIe computer. (GSTR, PI)

bank-switched memory: On Apple II computers, that part of the language card memory in which two 4K-portions of memory share the same address range ($D000–$DFF). (GSF, GSH, PI, P16)

base address: In indexed addressing, the fixed component of an address. (CTR, ETR)

base family: A font family is a base family if it is the ROM font or if a plain-styled example of the family can be found among the fonts in the FONTS subdirectory. (GSTR)
**base height:** In the LineEdit Tool Set, the distance between the top of the destination rectangle and the base line. This controls where the text is drawn. (GSTR)

**base line:** A horizontal line that coincides with the bottom of the main body of each character in a font. Character descenders extend below the base line. (GSTR, PI)

**BASIC:** Acronym for Beginners All-purpose Symbolic Instruction Code. BASIC is a high-level programming language designed to be easy to learn. Two versions of BASIC are available from Apple Computer for use with all Apple II-family systems: Applesoft BASIC (built into the firmware) and Integer BASIC. (CTR, ETR, GSTR, PI)

**BASICOUT:** The routine that outputs a character when the 80-column firmware is active. (GSF)

**batch:** A mode of executing a computer program in which all code and data required by the program are loaded into the computer at the beginning, the program is run, and all results are output at the end. Batch mode is non-interactive. (PI)

**Battery RAM:** RAM memory on the Apple IIGS clock chip. A battery preserves the clock settings and the RAM contents when the power is off. Control Panel settings are kept in the Battery RAM. (GSF)

**baud:** A unit of data transmission speed: the number of discrete signal state changes per second. Often, but not always, equivalent to bits per second. Compare bit rate. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**baud rate:** The rate at which serial data is transferred, measured in signal transitions per second. It takes approximately 10 signal transitions to transmit a single character. (GSF)

**best-fit font algorithm:** The algorithm that the Font Manager routine InstallFont uses to look for a font that matches a given set of specifications. (GSTR)

**binary:** A method of numeric representation using a base-2 system. Valid digits are 0 and 1. Compare hexadecimal, decimal. (GSH)

Characterized by having two different components, or by having only two alternatives or values available; sometimes used synonymously with binary system. (CTR, ETR)

**binary digit:** The smallest unit of information in the binary number system; a 0 or a 1. Also called a bit. (CTR, ETR)

**binary file:** (1) A file whose data is to be interpreted in binary form. Machine-language programs and pictures are stored in binary files. Compare text file. (2) A file in binary file format. (GST, PI, P16)

**binary file format:** The ProDOS 8 loadable file format, consisting of one absolute memory image along with its destination address. A file in binary file format has ProDOS file type $06 and is referred to as a BIN file. The System Loader cannot load BIN files. (PI, P16)

**binary operator:** An operator that combines two operands to produce a result. For example, + is a binary arithmetic operator; < is a binary relational operator; OR is a binary logical operator. Compare unary operator. (CTR, ETR)

**binary system:** The representation of numbers in the base-2 system, using only the two digits 0 and 1. For example, the numbers 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4 become 0, 1, 10, 11, and 100 in binary notation. The binary system is commonly used in computers because the values 0 and 1 can easily be represented in a variety of ways, such as the presence or absence of current, positive or negative voltage, or a white or black dot on the display screen. A single binary digit—a 0 or a 1—is called a bit. Compare decimal, hexadecimal. (CTR, ETR)

**bit:** A contraction of binary digit. The smallest unit of information that a computer can hold. The value of a bit (1 or 0) represents a simple two-way choice, such as yes or no, on or off, positive or negative, something or nothing. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)
**bit image**: A collection of bits in memory that have a rectilinear graphical representation. The display on the screen is a visible bit image. (GST)

**bit map**: A set of bits that represents the positions and states of a corresponding set of items. In graphics, video pixels are represented by a bit or bits in video display memory. See also graphics. (GSH, GST, P16)

**bit plane**: A method of representing images in computer memory. In a bit plane, consecutive bits in memory specify adjacent pixels in the image; if more than one bit is required to completely specify the state of a pixel, more than one bit plane is used for the image. Compare chunky pixels. (GSTR, PI)

**bit rate**: The speed at which bits are transmitted, usually expressed as bits per second, or bps. Compare baud. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**bits per second**: See bit rate. (CTR, ETR)

**block**: (1) A unit of data storage or transfer, typically 512 bytes. (2) A contiguous region of computer memory of arbitrary size, allocated by the Memory Manager. Also called a memory block. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

**block device**: A device that transfers data to or from a computer in multiples of 1 block (512 bytes) of characters at a time. Disk drives are block devices. Also called block I/O device. (GSF, GSTR, PI, P16)

**block I/O device**: See block device. (GSTR)

**board**: See printed-circuit board. (CTR, ETR)

**body**: In BASIC, the statements or instructions that make up a part of a program, such as a loop or a subroutine. (CTR, ETR)

**Boolean logic**: A mathematical system in which every expression evaluates to one of two values, usually referred to as TRUE or FALSE. (GSTR, PI)

**Boolean variable**: A variable that can have one of two values, usually referred to as TRUE or FALSE. (GSTR, PI)

**boot**: Another way to say start up. A computer boots by loading a program into memory from an external storage medium such as a disk. Starting up is often accomplished by first loading a small program, which then reads a larger program into memory. The program is said to "pull itself up by its own bootstraps"—hence the term bootstrapping or booting. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, P16)

**boot disk**: See startup disk. (CTR, ETR)

**boot prefix**: The ProDOS 16 prefix number "/". It specifies the name of the volume from which the currently running version of ProDOS 16 was started up. (PI)

**bootstrap**: See boot. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**bottom scroll bar**: The scroll bar the user selects to scroll horizontally through the data in a window. (GSTR)

**boundary rectangle**: A rectangle, defined as part of a QuickDraw II LocInfo record, that encloses the active area of the pixel image and imposes a coordinate system on it. Its upper-left corner is always aligned on the first pixel in the pixel map. (GSTR, PI)

**boundsRect**: The GrafPort field that defines the port's boundary rectangle. (GSTR, PI)

**bps**: See bit rate. (CTR, ETR)

**branch**: (v) To pass program control to a line or statement other than the next in sequence. (n) A statement that performs a branch. See conditional branch, unconditional branch. (CTR, ETR)

**BREAK**: A SPACE (0) signal, sent over a communication line, of long enough duration to interrupt the sender. This signal is often used to end a session with a time-sharing service. BREAK is also used in BASIC to stop execution of a program. It's generated by pressing Control-C. (CTR, ETR)

**breakpoint**: A machine-language instruction in a program that causes execution to halt. (PI)

**BRK**: A "software interrupt." An instruction that causes the 6502 or 65C02 microprocessor to halt. Pronounced "break." (CTR, ETR)
buffer: A holding area in the computer’s memory (for example, a print buffer) where information can be stored by one program or device and then read at a different rate by another. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

bug: An error in a program that causes it not to work as intended. The expression reportedly comes from the early days of computing when an itinerant moth shorted a connection and caused a breakdown in a room-size computer. (CTR, ETR, GST)

bus: A group of wires or circuits that transmit related information from one part of a computer system to another. In a network, a line of cable with connectors linking devices together. A bus network has a beginning and an end. (It’s not in a closed circle or T shape.) (CTR, ETR, GST)

Busy word: A firmware flag, consulted by the Scheduler, that protects system software that is not reentrant from being called while processing another call. (GSTR, PI, P16)

button: (1) A pushbutton-like image in dialog boxes where the user clicks to designate, confirm, or cancel an action. See also check box, radio button. (2) A button on a mouse or other pointing device. See also mouse button. (GST, GSTR, PI)

byte: A unit of information consisting of 8 bits. A byte can have any value between 0 and 255, which may represent an instruction, a letter, a number, a punctuation mark, or another character. See also bit, kilobyte, megabyte. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

C: A high-level programming language. One of the languages available for the Apple II GS Programmer’s Workshop. (GSTR, PI)

c flag: See carry flag. (GSTR, PI)

C string: An ASCII character string terminated by a null character (ASCII value = 0). (GSTR, PI)

C string: An ASCII character string terminated by a null character (ASCII value = 0). Compare Pascal string. (GSTR)

C-type string: Same as C string. (GSTR)

C3COUT1: Also called BASICOUT, this is the routine that COUT jumps to when the 80-column firmware is active. (GSF)

cable: An insulated bundle of wires with connectors on the ends; the number of wires varies with the type of connection. Examples are serial cables, disk drive cables, and AppleTalk cables. (CTR, ETR)

call: (v) To request the execution of a subroutine, function, or procedure. (n) A request from the keyboard or from a procedure to execute a named procedure. See procedure. (CTR, ETR, GST, P16)

call block: The sequence of assembly-language instructions used to call ProDOS 16 or System Loader functions. (P16)

Cancel: One of two predefined item ID numbers for dialog box buttons (Cancel = 2). Compare OK. (GSTR, PI)

cancel: To stop an operation, such as the setting of page-setup values in a dialog box, without saving any results produced up to that point. (GSTR, PI)

card: See peripheral card. (PI)

caret: A symbol that indicates where something should or will be inserted in text. On the screen it designates the insertion point, and is usually a vertical bar (1). (GSTR, PI)

carriage return: An ASCII character (decimal 13) that ordinarily causes a printer or display device to place the next character on the left margin; in APW C, equal to newline (0). (CTR, ETR, GST, GSH)

carrier: The background signal on a communication channel that is modified to carry information. Under RS-232-C rules, the carrier signal is equivalent to a continuous MARK (1) signal; a transition to 0 then represents a start bit. (CTR, ETR)

carry flag: A status bit in the 6502 or 65C02 microprocessor, used as a ninth bit with the eight accumulator bits in addition, subtraction, rotation, and shift operations. (CTR, ETR)
**carry flag:** A status bit in the microprocessor indicating whether an accumulator calculation has resulted in a carry out of the register. Also called c flag. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**cathode-ray tube (CRT):** An electronic device, such as a television picture tube, that produces images on a phosphor-coated screen. The phosphor coating emits light when struck by a focused beam of electrons. A common display device used with personal computers. (CTR, GSH, GST)

**CDA:** See classic desk accessory. (GSTR, PI)

**CDA menu:** The menu on which classic desk accessories are listed; the user selects the menu by pressing Control-Apple-Escape. See also classic desk accessory. (GSTR)

**central processing unit (CPU):** The “brain” of the computer; the microprocessor that performs the actual computations in machine language. See microprocessor. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

**character:** (1) Any symbol that has a widely understood meaning and thus can convey information. Some characters—such as letters, numbers, and punctuation—can be displayed on the monitor screen and printed on a printer. Most characters are represented in the computer as 1-byte values. (2) In QuickDraw II, a single ASCII character. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR)

**character bounds rectangle:** The rectangle that determines the extent of the background pixels of a character. (GSTR)

**character bounds width:** The width of a character's character bounds rectangle. (GSTR)

**character code:** A number used to represent a character for processing by a computer system. (CTR, ETR)

**character device:** A device that transfers data to or from a computer as a stream of individual characters. Keyboards and printers are character devices. (GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

**character generator:** The IC responsible for providing all text and special characters to the computer that may be displayed on the video monitor. (GSH)

**character image:** An arrangement of bits that defines a character in a font. (PI) The part of a font strike that represents a character in a font. (GSTR)

**character image width:** The number of columns in a character image. (GSTR)

**character origin:** The point on the base line used as a reference location for drawing a character. (GSTR, PI)

**character position:** An index into LineEdit text, with position 0 corresponding to the first character. (GSTR)

**character rectangle:** A rectangle that encloses a character image. Its width is equal to the image width of the character; its height is equal to the character height. (GSTR)

**character set:** The entire set of characters that can be either shown on a monitor or used to code computer instructions. In a printer, the entire set of characters that the printer is capable of printing. (CTR, ETR)

**character width:** The number of pixels the pen position is to be advanced after the character is drawn. (GSTR, PI)

**check box:** A small box associated with an option in a dialog box. When the user clicks the check box, that may change the option or affect related options. See also radio button. (GSTR, PI)

**chip:** See integrated circuit. (CTR, GST)

**Choose Printer dialog box:** A Print Manager dialog box that lets the user select a printer or port for printing. (GSTR, PI)

**chunkiness:** The number of bits required to describe the state of a pixel in a pixel image. (GSTR, PI)
chunky pixels: A method of representing images in computer memory. In chunky pixel organization, a number of consecutive bits in memory combine to specify the state of a single pixel in the image. Consecutive groups of bits (the size of the group is equal to the image's chunkiness) define adjacent pixels in the image. Compare bit plane. (GSTR, PI)

Circuit board: A board containing embedded circuits and an attached collection of integrated circuits (chips). (GST)

clamp: A memory location that contains the maximum and minimum excursion positions of the mouse cursor when the desktop is in use. (GSF)

clamp values: The X- and Y-limits, in terms of pixels, on cursor position controlled by mouse movement. (GSTR, PI)

Classic desk accessory (CDA): Desk accessories designed to execute in a non-desktop, non-event-based environment. Compare new desk accessory. (GSTR, PI)

Clear To Send: An RS-232-C signal from a DCE to a DTE that is normally kept false until the DCE makes it true, indicating that all circuits are ready to transfer data out. See Data Communication Equipment, Data Terminal Equipment. (CTR, ETR)

Click: To position the pointer on something, and then to press and quickly release the button on the mouse or other pointing device. (GSTR, PI)

Clip: To restrict drawing to within a particular boundary; any drawing attempted outside that boundary does not occur. (GSTR, PI)

Clipboard: The holding place for the material the user last cut or copied; a buffer area in memory. Information on the Clipboard can be inserted (pasted) into documents. In memory, the contents of the clipboard are called the desk scrap. (GSTR, PI)

Clipping region: The region to which an application limits drawing in a GraPort. (GSTR, PI)

clock: (1) The timing circuit that controls execution of a microprocessor. Also called system clock. (2) An integrated circuit, often with battery-backup memory, that gives the current date and time. Also called clock-calendar. (GSTR, PI)

clock chip: A special chip in which parameter RAM and the current setting for the date and time are stored. This chip is powered by a battery when the system is off, thus preserving the information. (GST)

clock speed: The frequency of the system clock signal in megahertz. (PI)

close: To terminate access to an open file. When a file is closed, its updated version is written to disk and all resources it needed when open (such as its I/O buffer) are released. The file must be opened before it can be accessed again. (PI) To turn a window back into the icon that represents it. (GST)

close box: The small white box on the left side of the title bar of an active window. Clicking it closes the window. (GSTR, PI)

CMOS: Acronym for complementary metal oxide semiconductor, one of several methods of making integrated circuits out of silicon. CMOS devices are characterized by their low power consumption. CMOS techniques are derived from MOS techniques. (GSF, GSH, GST, PI)

code: (1) A number or symbol used to represent some piece of information. (2) The statements or instructions that make up a program. (CTR, ETR, GST)

cold start: The process of starting up the Apple II when the power is first turned on (or as if the power had just been turned on) by loading the operating system into main memory, and then loading and running a program. Compare boot, warm start. (CTR, ETR, GST)
**color fringing:** The rainbow-like effect that appears around text characters when they are displayed in color on most color video monitors. This fringing is unavoidable because the color-detection circuitry of most composite video color monitors cannot respond fast enough to the changing of the color information during the text portion of the display. Displaying text in monochrome makes it more readable. (GSH)

**color table:** One table of 16 lookup tables in Apple IIGS memory. The table lists the available color values for a scan line. (GSTR, PI)

**column:** A vertical arrangement of graphics points or character positions on the display. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**command:** An instruction that causes the computer to perform some action. A command can be typed from a keyboard, selected from a menu with a hand-operated device (such as a mouse), or embedded in a program. (CTR, ETR, GST) (1) In the Standard C Library, a parameter that tells a function which of several actions to perform. (2) In the APW Shell, a word that tells APW which utility to execute. (GSH)

**command character:** An ASCII character, usually Control-A or Control-I, that causes the serial port firmware to interpret subsequent characters as commands. (CTR)

**command line:** (1) In APW, the line of text with which the user invokes a procedure or function or executes a program. The command line often includes both the name of the function to execute and a list of parameters to be passed to the function. (2) The line on the screen on which a command is entered. (PI)

**command register:** An ACIA location (at $C09A for port 1 and $C0AA for port 2) that stores parity type and RS-232-C signal characteristics. (CTR)

**command-line interface:** The type of interface between user and program in which information is passed in a command line. (PI)

**compact:** To rearrange allocated memory blocks in order to increase the amount of contiguous unallocated (free) memory. The Memory Manager compacts memory when needed. (P16)

**compaction:** The rearrangement of allocated blocks in memory to open up larger contiguous areas of free space. (GSTR, PI)

**compiler:** A language translator that converts a program written in a high-level programming language (source code) into an equivalent program in some lower-level language such as machine language (object code) for later execution. (CTR, ETR, GST) A program that produces object files (containing machine-language code) from source files written in a high-level language such as C. Compare assembler. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**component:** A part; in particular, a part of a computer system. (GST)

**composite video:** A standard video signal that includes all color and timing information that is needed by a composite video monitor. Several video standards are in use around the world: NTSC video is used in northern America and Japan; PAL video is used in much of Europe; SECAM is used in the USSR and many other countries. The Apple IIGS is capable of generating both NTSC and PAL video. Compare RGB. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

**computer:** An electronic device that performs predefined (programmed) computations at high speed and with great accuracy. A machine that is used to store, transfer, and transform information. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**computer language:** See programming language. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**computer system:** A computer and its associated hardware, firmware, and software. (CTR)

**conditional assembly:** A feature of an assembler that allows the programmer to define macros or other pieces of code such that the assembler assembles them differently under different conditions. (GST)
conditional branch: A branch whose execution depends on the truth of a condition or the value of an expression. Compare unconditional branch. (CTR, ETR, GST)

configuration: (1) The total combination and arrangement of hardware components—CPU, video display device, keyboard, and peripheral devices—that make up a computer system. (2) The software settings that allow various hardware components of a computer system to communicate with each other. (CTR, ETR, GST)

connector: A plug, socket, jack, or port. (CTR, ETR)

constant: In a program, a symbol that represents a fixed, unchanging value. Compare variable. (CTR, ETR)

content region: The area in a window in which an application presents information to the user. (GSTR, PI)

control: An object in a window with which the user, using the mouse, can cause instant action with visible results or change settings to modify a future action. (GSTR, PI)

control character: A nonprinting character that controls or modifies the way information is printed or displayed. In the Apple II family, control characters have ASCII values between 0 and 31, and are typed from a keyboard by holding down the Control key while pressing some other key. In the Macintosh family, the Command key performs a similar function. (CTR, ETR)

control code: One or more nonprinting characters—included in a text file—whose function is to change the way a printer prints the text. For example, a program may use certain control codes to turn boldface printing on and off. See control character. (CTR, ETR)

control definition procedure: A procedure used to define the appearance and behavior of a custom control. (GSTR)

control key: A general term for a key that controls the operation of other keys; for example, Apple, Caps Lock, Control, Option, and Shift. When you hold down or engage a control key while pressing another key, the combination makes that other key behave differently. Also called a modifier key. (CTR, ETR)

Control key: A specific key on Apple II–family keyboards that produces control characters when used in combination with other keys. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Control Manager: The Apple IIGS tool set that manages controls, which are objects on the screen that the user can manipulate with the mouse to cause instant action or change settings. (GSTR, PI)

Control Panel: A desk accessory that lets the user change certain system parameters, such as speaker volume, display colors, and configuration of slots and ports. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

control record: A data structure that defines the appearance and behavior of a control. (GSTR)

control register: A special register that programs can read and write, similar to a soft switch. The control registers are specific locations in the I/O space ($Cxxx) in bank $E0; they are accessible from bank $00 if I/O shadowing is on. (GSF) An ACIA location (at $C09B for port 1 and $C0AB for port 2) that stores data format and baud rate selections. (CTR)

Control-Reset: A combination keystroke on Apple II–family computers that usually causes an Applesoft BASIC program or command to stop immediately. If a program disables the Control-Reset feature, you need to turn the computer off to get the program to stop. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

controller card: A peripheral card that connects a device such as a printer or disk drive to a computer's main logic board and controls the operation of the device. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST)
controlling program: A program that loads and runs other programs, without itself leaving memory. A controlling program is responsible for shutting down its subprograms and freeing their memory space when they are finished. A shell, for example, is a controlling program. (GSH, PI, P16)

coordinate plane: A two-dimensional grid defined by QuickDraw II. All drawing commands are located in terms of coordinates on the grid. (GSTR, PI)

coordinates: X and Y locations on the QuickDraw II coordinate plane. Most QuickDraw II routines accept and return coordinates in the order (Y,X). (GSTR, PI)

copy: To duplicate something by selecting it and choosing Copy from the Edit menu. A copy of the selected portion is placed on the Clipboard, without affecting the original selection. (GSTR, PI)

copy protect: To make a disk uncopyable. Software publishers frequently try to copy protect their disks to prevent them from being illegally duplicated by software pirates. Compare write protect. (CTR, ETR)

COUT: The firmware entry point for the Apple II character-output subroutine. COUT is actually an I/O link located in RAM rather than in ROM, and so can be modified to contain the address of the presently active character-output subroutine. (GSF)

COUT1: An entry point within the Apple II character-output subroutine. (GSF)

CPU: See central processing unit and microprocessor. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

crash: To cease to operate unexpectedly, possibly destroying information in the process. (CTR, ETR)

creation date: An attribute of a ProDOS 16 file; it specifies the date on which the file was first created. (PI, P16)

creation time: An attribute of a ProDOS 16 file; it specifies the time at which the file was first created. (PI, P16)

CRT: See cathode-ray tube. (CTR)

CTS: See Clear To Send. (CTR)

current application: The application program currently loaded and running. Every application program is identified by a User ID number; the current application is defined as that application whose User ID is the present value of the USERID global variable. (P16)

current font: The font currently being used by QuickDraw II to draw text. (GSTR)

current input device: The source, such as the keyboard or a modem, from which a program is currently receiving its input. (CTR, ETR)

current output device: The destination, such as the display screen or a printer, currently receiving a program's output. (CTR, ETR)

cursor: A graphic icon displayed by the operating system or application program that indicates where the next input from the user is expected. Different styles of cursors are used with the Apple II GS: an arrow, an underbar, a vertical bar, and an inverse video block. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

cursor record: The data structure that defines the height and width of the cursor, the image of the cursor, the mask controlling the appearance of the cursor, and the hot spot defining where the image of the cursor will be placed by the mouse. (GSTR)

cut: To remove something by selecting it and choosing Cut from the Edit menu. The cut portion is placed on the Clipboard. (GSTR, PI)

D register: See direct register. (PI)

DAC: See digital-to-analog converter. (CTR, ETR, GST)

data: Information transferred to or from or stored in a computer or other mechanical communications or storage device. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH)

data area: A document as viewed in a window. The data area is the entire document, only a portion of which (the visible region) may be seen in the window at any one time. (GSTR, PI)
data bank register: A register in the 65816 processor that contains the high-order byte of the 24-bit address that references data in memory. (GSTR, PI)

data bits: The bits in a communication transfer that contain information. Compare start bit, stop bit. (CTR, ETR, GST)

data block: A 512-byte portion of a ProDOS 16 standard file that consists of whatever kind of information the file may contain. (GSH, P16)

data bus: A set of the electrical conductors that carry data from one internal part of the computer to another. (P1)

Data Carrier Detect (DCD): A signal from a DCE (such as a modem) to a DTE (such as an Apple IIGS) indicating that a communication connection has been established. See Data Communication Equipment, Data Terminal Equipment. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Data Communication Equipment (DCE): As defined by the RS-232-C standard, any device that transmits or receives information. Usually this device is a modem. (CTR, ETR, GST)

data format: The form in which data is stored, manipulated, or transferred. For example, when data is transmitted and received serially, it typically has a data format of one start bit, five to eight data bits, an optional parity bit, and one or two stop bits. (CTR, GST)

data set: A device that modulates, demodulates, and controls signals transferred between business machines and communication facilities. A form of modem. (CTR, ETR)

Data Set Ready (DSR): A signal from a DCE to a DTE indicating that the DCE has established a connection. See Data Communication Equipment, Data Terminal Equipment. (CTR, ETR, GST)

data structure: A specifically formatted item of data or a form into which data may be placed. (GSTR, PI)

Data Terminal Equipment (DTE): As defined by the RS-232-C standard, any device that generates or absorbs information, thus acting as an endpoint of a communication connection. A computer might serve as a DTE. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Data Terminal Ready (DTR): A signal from a DTE to a DCE indicating a readiness to transmit or receive data. See Data Communication Equipment, Data Terminal Equipment. (CTR, ETR, GST)

DB register: See data bank register. (GSTR, PI)

DCD: Abbreviation for Data Carrier Detect, a modem signal indicating that a communication connection has been established. See Data Carrier Detect. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST)

DCE: See Data Communication Equipment. (CTR, ETR, GST)

deck character: A character with a character width of 0. (GSTR)

debug: A colloquial term that means to locate and correct an error or the cause of a problem or malfunction in a computer program. Compare troubleshoot. See also bug. (CTR, ETR, GST)

debugger: A utility used for software development that allows you to analyze a program for errors that cause it to malfunction. For example, it may allow you to step through execution of the program one instruction at a time. (PI)

decimal: A method of numeric representation using a base-10 system. Valid digits are 0 through 9. Compare hexadecimal, binary. (CTR, ETR, GSH)

default: A preset response to a question or prompt. The default is automatically used by the computer if the user doesn't supply a different response. Default values prevent a program from stalling or crashing if no value is supplied by the user. (CTR, ETR, GST)

default button: The button in a dialog box whose action will be executed if the user presses the Return key. (GSTR)
**default prefix:** The pathname prefix attached by ProDOS 16 to a partial pathname when no prefix number is supplied by the application. The default prefix is equivalent to prefix number 0. (GST, PI, P16)

**deferred execution:** The execution of a BASIC program instruction that is part of a complete program. The program instruction is executed only when the complete program is run. You defer execution of the instruction by preceding it with a program line number. The complete program executes consecutive instructions in numerical order. Compare immediate execution. (CTR, ETR)

**definition procedure:** A routine that defines the characteristics of some desktop feature such as a window or control. For example, TaskMaster needs a pointer to a window-content definition procedure (wContDefProc) in order to draw the contents of windows that it manipulates. (PI)

**DefProc:** See definition procedure. (PI)

**delete:** To remove something, such as a character or word from a file, or a file from a disk. (GST)

**Delete key:** A key on the upper-right corner of the Apple IIe, Apple IIC, and Apple IIGS keyboards that erases the character immediately preceding (to the left of) the cursor. Similar to the Macintosh Backspace key. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

**delimiter:** A character that is used for punctuation to mark the beginning or end of a sequence of characters, and which therefore is not considered part of the sequence itself. For example, Applesoft BASIC uses the double quotation mark (") as a delimiter for string constants: the string "DOG" consists of the three characters D, O, and G, and does not include the quotation marks. (CTR, ETR)

**delta:** The difference from something the program already knows. For example, mouse moves are represented as deltas compared to previous mouse locations. The name comes from the way mathematicians use the Greek letter delta (Δ) to represent a difference. (GSF)

**delta guide:** A description of something new in terms of its differences from something the reader already knows about. The name comes from the way mathematicians use the Greek letter delta (Δ) to represent a difference. (GST)

**demodulate:** To recover the information being transmitted by a modulated signal. For example, a conventional radio receiver demodulates an incoming broadcast signal to convert it into the sound emitted by the radio’s speaker. Compare modulate. (CTR, ETR)

**dereference:** To substitute a pointer for a memory handle, or a value for a pointer. When you dereference a memory block’s handle, you access the block directly (through its master pointer) rather than indirectly (through its handle). (GSTR, PI, P16)

**descender:** Any part of a character that lies below the base line (such as the tail on a lowercase “p”). (GSF, PI)

**descent:** In a font, the distance between the base line and the descent line. (GSTR, PI)

**descent line:** A horizontal line that coincides with the bottoms of character descenders (such as the tail on a lowercase “p”) that extends farthest below the base line. See also ascendant line, base height, font height. (GSTR, PI)

**desk accessories:** "Mini-applications" that are available from the computer’s menu regardless of which application you’re using. The Control Panel is an example of a desk accessory. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**desk accessory event:** An event that occurs when the user enters the special keystroke (Control–Apple–Escape) to invoke a classic desk accessory. (GSTR, PI)

**Desk Accessory menu:** The menu whose title is a colored apple symbol. (GSTR)

**Desk Manager:** The Apple IIGS tool set that executes desk accessories and enables applications to support them. (GSTR, PI)
desk scrap: A piece of data, maintained by the Scrap Manager, taken from one application and available for insertion into another. (GSTR, PI)

desktop: The visual interface between the computer and the user. In computers that support the desktop concept, the desktop consists of a menu bar at the top of the screen, and a gray area in which applications are opened as windows. The desktop interface was first developed for the Macintosh computer. (GSF, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

desktop environment: A set of program features that make user interactions with an application resemble operations on a desktop. Commands appear as options in pull-down menus, and material being worked on appears in areas of the screen called windows. The user selects commands or other material by using the mouse to move a pointer around on the screen. (GST)

desktop interface: See desktop. (PI)

desktop user interface: See desktop, desktop environment. (GST, GSTR)

desktop user interface: The visual appearance of a program and the way in which it interacts with the user. In applications that use the desktop user interface, commands appear as options in pull-down menus, and material being worked on appears in rectangular areas of the screen called windows. The user selects commands or other material by using the mouse to move a pointer around on the screen. (GSH)

destination: See destination location. (PI)

destination location: The location (memory buffer or portion of the QuickDraw II coordinate plane) to which data such as text or graphics are copied. See also destination rectangle. (GSTR, PI)

destination rectangle: (1) The rectangle (on the QuickDraw II coordinate plane) in which text or graphics are drawn when transferred from somewhere else. Compare source rectangle. (2) In LineEdit, the rectangle that determines where the text will be drawn. (GSTR, PI)

development environment: A program or set of programs that allows you to write applications. It typically consists of a text editor, an assembler or compiler, a linker, and support programs such as a debugger. (PI)

device: A piece of equipment (hardware) used in conjunction with a computer and under the computer's control. Also called a peripheral device because such equipment is often physically separate from, but attached to, the computer. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

device driver: A program that handles the transfer of data to and from a peripheral device, such as a printer or disk drive. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

device driver event: An event generated by a device driver. (GSTR)

device handler: See device driver. (CTR, ETR)

device-driver event: An event generated by a device driver. (PI)

dial: An indicator on the screen that displays a quantitative setting or value. Usually found in analog form, such as a fuel gauge or a thermometer. A scroll bar is a standard type of dial. (GSTR, PI)

dialog: See dialog box. (GSTR, PI)

dialog box: A box on the screen that contains a message requesting more information from the user. See also alert. (GSTR, PI)

Dialog Manager: The Apple IIGS tool set that manipulates dialog boxes and alerts, which appear on the screen when an application needs more information to carry out a command or when the user needs to be notified of an important situation. (GSTR, PI)
**dialog pointer:** A pointer to a dialog's GrafPort; equivalent to the window pointer for the dialog box. (GSTR)

**dialog record:** Information describing a dialog window that is maintained by the Dialog Manager. (GSTR, PI)

**dialog template:** A record that contains information about a dialog to be created. (GSTR)

**dialog window:** The window in which a dialog box appears. (GSTR, PI)

**digit:** (1) One of the characters 0 through 9, used to express numbers in decimal form. (2) One of the characters used to express numbers in some other form, such as 0 and 1 in binary or 0 through 9 and A through F in hexadecimal. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**digital:** (adj) Represented in a discrete (noncontinuous) form, such as numerical digits or integers. For example, contemporary digital clocks show the time as a digital display (such as 2:57) instead of using the positions of a pair of hands on a clock face. Compare analog. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**digital data:** Data that can be represented by digits—that is, data that are discrete rather than continuously variable. Compare analog data. (CTR, ETR)

**Digital Oscillator Chip (DOC):** An integrated circuit in the Apple IIGS that contains 32 digital oscillators, each of which can generate a sound from stored digital waveform data in a wavetable. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

**digital RGB video monitor:** A type of RGB video display in which the intensities of the red, green, and blue signals are fixed at discrete values. (PI)

**digital signal:** A signal that is sent and received in discrete intervals. A signal that does not vary continuously over time. Compare analog signal. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**digital-to-analog converter:** A device that converts quantities from digital to analog form. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**dim:** On the Apple IIGS desktop, to display a control or menu item in gray rather than black, to notify the user that the item is inactive. (GSTR, PI)

**DIN:** Abbreviation for Deutsche Industrie Normal, a European standards organization. (GSF, GSH, GST)

**DIN connector:** A type of connector with multiple pins inside a round outer shield. (GSF, GSH, GST)

**DIP:** See dual in-line package. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**DIP switches:** A bank of tiny switches, each of which can be moved manually one way or the other to represent one of two values (usually on and off). See dual in-line package. (CTR, ETR)

**direct memory access (DMA):** A means of fast data transfer into or out of computer memory to or from a computer peripheral. A peripheral device, usually a card in a peripheral I/O expansion slot, puts the 65C816 microprocessor in an idle state, and takes control of the computer for a short period of time. Data in memory may be directly accessed without the time-consuming usual handshaking and protocol. (GSH)

**direct page:** A page (256 bytes) of bank $00 of Apple IIGS memory, any part of which can be addressed with a short (1-byte) address because its high-address byte is always $00 and its middle-address byte is the value of the 65C816 direct register. Coresident programs or routines can have their own direct pages at different locations. The direct page corresponds to the 6502 processor's zero page. The term direct page is often used informally to refer to any part of the lower portion of the direct-page/stack space. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**direct register:** A hardware register in the 65816 processor that specifies the start of the direct page. (GSF, GSH, GST, PI, P16)
**direct-page/stack segment**: A program segment that is used to initialize the size and contents of an application's stack and direct page. (GSTR, PI)

**direct-page/stack space**: A portion of bank $00 of Apple IIGS memory reserved for a program's direct page and stack. Initially, the 65C816 processor's direct register contains the base address of the space, and its stack register contains the highest address. In use, the stack grows downward from the top of the direct-page/stack space, and the lower part of the space contains direct-page data. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

**directory**: A file that contains a list of the names and locations of other files stored on a disk. Directories are either volume directories or subdirectories. A directory is sometimes called a catalog. (GSH, GST)

**directory file**: A directory. One of the two principal categories of ProDOS 16 files. Directory files contain specially formatted entries that give the names and disk locations of other files. (GSH, P16)

**disable**: To make unresponsive to user actions. A dialog box control that is disabled does nothing when selected or manipulated by the user. In appearance, however, it is identical to an enabled control. Compare inactive. (GSTR, PI)

**disabled menu**: A menu that can be pulled down, but in which items are dimmed and not selectable. (GSTR, PI)

**disassembler**: A language translator that converts a machine-language program into an equivalent program in assembly language, which is easier for programmers to understand. The opposite of an assembler. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST, PI)

**disk**: An information-storage medium consisting of a flat, circular, magnetic surface on which information can be recorded in the form of small magnetized spots, in a manner similar to the way sounds are recorded on tape. See floppy disk, hard disk. (CTR, ETR)

**disk controller card**: A peripheral card that provides the connection between one or two disk drives and the computer. (This connection, or interface, is built into the Apple IIc, the Apple IIGS, and all Macintosh-family computers.) (CTR, ETR, GST)

**disk device**: See block device. (P16)

**disk drive**: A computer peripheral device that stores digital data on a revolving magnetic surface. Disk drives may be floppy disk drives (which use a removable, flexible mylar disk as the medium) or hard disk drives (which use a fixed aluminum platter as the medium). Disk drives retain the information after the computer is turned off, but are capable of altering the data as requested by the computer program. (CTR, ETR, GSH)

**disk envelope**: A removable, protective paper sleeve used when handling or storing a 5.25-inch disk. It must be removed before you insert the disk in a disk drive. Compare disk jacket. (CTR, ETR)

**Disk II, Disk II drive**: A type of disk drive made and sold by Apple Computer, Inc., for use with the Apple II, II Plus, and IIe computers. It uses 5.25-inch disks. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, PI)

**disk jacket**: A permanent, protective covering for a disk. 5.25-inch disks have flexible, paper or plastic jackets; 3.5-inch disks have hard plastic jackets. The disk is never removed from the jacket. Compare disk envelope. (CTR, ETR)

**disk operating system**: An operating system whose principal function is to manage files and communication with one or more disk drives. DOS and ProDOS are two families of Apple II disk operating systems. (GSF, GSH, GST, PI, P16)

**Disk Operating System (DOS)**: An optional software system for the Apple II family of computers that enables the computer to control and communicate with one or more disk drives. The acronym DOS rhymes with boss. (CTR, ETR)
**disk port**: The connector on the rear panel of the Apple IIGS for attaching disk drives. (PI)

**disk-based**: See disk-resident. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**disk-resident**: A program that does not remain in memory. The computer retrieves all or part of the program from the disk, as needed. Sometimes called disk-based. Compare memory-resident. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**display**: (1) A general term to describe what you see on the screen of your display device when you’re using a computer. (2) Short for a display device. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**display color**: The color currently being used to draw high-resolution or low-resolution graphics on the display screen. (CTR, ETR)

**display device**: A device that displays information, such as a television set or video monitor. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**display mode**: A specification for the way in which a video display functions, including such parameters as whether displaying text or graphics, available colors, and number of pixels. The Apple IIGS has two text display modes (40 column and 80 column), two standard Apple II graphics display modes (Hi-Res and Double Hi-Res), and two new Super Hi-Res graphics display modes (320 mode and 640 mode). (GSTR, PI)

**display rectangle**: A rectangle that determines where an item is displayed within a dialog box. (GSTR, PI)

**display screen**: The screen of the monitor; the area where you view text and pictures when using the computer. (CTR, ETR)

**dispose**: To permanently deallocate a memory block. The Memory Manager disposes of a memory block by removing its master pointer. Any handle to that pointer will then be invalid. Compare purge. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**dithering**: A technique for alternating the values of adjacent pixels to create the effect of intermediate values. Dithering can give the effect of shades of gray on a black-and-white display, or more colors on a color display. (GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

**dividing line**: A line that divides groups of items in a menu; such a line uses the space of an entire item and requires an item record. Compare underline. (GSTR)

**DMA**: See direct memory access. (GSH)

**DOC**: See Digital Oscillator Chip. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

**document**: A file created by an application. (GSTR, PI)

**document window**: A window that displays a document. One of the two predefined window formats. Compare alert window. (GSTR, PI)

**dormant**: Said of a program that is not being executed, but whose essential parts are all in the computer's memory. A dormant program may be quickly restarted because it need not be reloaded from disk. (PI, P16)

**DOS**: Acronym for disk operating system. An Apple II disk operating system. See Disk Operating System. (GSF, GSH, GST, P16)

**DOS 3.2**: An early Apple II operating system. DOS stands for Disk Operating System; 3.2 is the version number. Disks formatted using DOS 3.2 have 13 sectors per track. (CTR, ETR)

**DOS 3.3**: An operating system for the Apple II family of computers. DOS stands for Disk Operating System; 3.3 is the version number. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**Double Hi-Res**: A high-resolution graphics display mode on Apple II computers with at least 128K of RAM, consisting of an array of points 560 wide by 192 high with 16 colors. (GSF, GSH)

**double-click**: To position the pointer where you want an action to take place, and then press and release the mouse button twice in quick succession without moving the mouse. (GSTR, PI)
draft printing: The print method that the LaserWriter uses. QuickDraw II calls are converted directly into command codes the printer understands, which are then immediately used to drive the printer. Compare spool printing. (GSTR, PI)

drag: To position the pointer on something, press and hold the mouse button, move the mouse, and release the mouse button. When you release the mouse button, you either confirm a menu selection or move an object to a new location. (GSTR, PI)

drag region: A region in a window (usually on the title bar) in which the mouse pointer must be placed before the user can drag the window. (GSTR, PI)

draw: In QuickDraw II, to color pixels in a pixel image. (GSTR, PI)

drawing environment: The complete description of how and where drawing may take place. Every open window on the Apple IIGS screen is associated with a GrafPort record, which specifies the window's drawing environment. Same as port, graphic port. (GSTR, PI)

drawing mask: An 8-bit by 8-bit pattern that controls which pixels in the QuickDraw II pen will be modified when the pen draws. (GSTR, PI)

drawing mode: One of 16 possible interactions between pixels in QuickDraw II's pen pattern and pixels already on the screen that fall under the pen's path. In modeCopy mode, for example, pixels already on the screen are ignored. In modeXOR mode, on the other hand, bits in pixels on the screen are XOR'd with bits in pixels in the pen; the resulting pixels are drawn on the screen. See also pen mode, text mode. (GSTR, PI)

drawing pen: See pen. (GSTR, PI)

drive: See disk drive. (CTR, ETR)

driver: See device driver. (GSTR, PI)

DSR: Abbreviation for Data Set Ready, a signal indicating that a modem has established a connection. See Data Set Ready. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSTR)

DTE: See Data Terminal Equipment. (CTR, ETR, GST)

DTR: Abbreviation for Data Terminal Ready, a signal indicating that a terminal is ready to transmit or receive data. See Data Terminal Ready. (CTR, ETR, GSTR, GST)

dual in-line package (DIP): An integrated circuit packaged in a narrow rectangular box with a row of metal pins along each side. DIP switches on the box allow you to change settings. For example, ImageWriter printer DIP switches control functions such as line feed, form length, and baud setting. (CTR, ETR, GST)

Dvorak keyboard: An alternate keyboard layout, also known as the American Simplified Keyboard, which increases typing speed because the keys most often used are in the positions easiest to reach. Compare QWERTY keyboard. (CTR, ETR, GST)

dynamic ROM: A form of read-only memory (ROM) in which data is retained in memory while the computer power is off, but is lost as soon as the system is turned on. (GSH)

dynamic segment: A load segment capable of being loaded during program execution. Compare static segment. (GSTR, PI, P16)

e flag: A flag bit in the 65C816 that determines whether the processor is in native mode or emulation mode. (P16)

e flag: One of three flag bits in the 65816 processor that programs use to control the processor's operating modes. The setting of the e flag determines whether the processor is in native mode (6502), or emulation mode (65816). See also m flag and x flag. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)
**EBCDIC:** Acronym for Extended Binary-Coded Decimal Interchange Code; pronounced "EB-si-dik." A code used by IBM that represents each letter, number, special character, and control character as an 8-bit binary number. EBCDIC has a character set of 256 8-bit characters. Compare ASCII. (CTR, ETR)

**edit:** To change or modify. For example, to insert, remove, replace, or move text in a document. (GST)

**edit record:** A complete text editing environment in the Line Edit Tool Set, which includes the text to be edited, the GrafPort and rectangle in which to display the text, the arrangement of the text within the rectangle, and other editing and display information. (GSTR, PI)

**editor:** A program that helps you create and edit information of a particular form; for example, a text editor or a graphics editor. (GST)

**effective address:** In machine-language programming, the address of the memory location on which a particular instruction operates, which may be arrived at by indexed addressing or some other addressing method. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**embedded:** Contained within. For example, the string 'HUMPTY DUMPTY' is said to contain an embedded space. (CTR, ETR)

**empty handle:** A handle pointing to a NIL master pointer. (GSTR)

**emulate:** To operate in a way identical to a different system. For example, the Apple II 2780/3780 Protocol Emulator and the Apple II 3270 BSC Protocol Emulator, together with the Apple Communications Protocol Card (ACPC), allow the Apple II, Apple II Plus, or Apple IIe to emulate the operations of IBM 3278 and 3277 terminals and 3274 and 3271 control units. (CTR, ETR)

**emulation mode:** A manner of operating in which one system imitates another. In the Apple IIGS computer, the mode the 65C816 is in when the Apple IIGS is running programs written for Apple II's that use the 6502. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, P16)

**enable:** To make responsive to user manipulation. A dialog or menu that is enabled can be selected by the user. Enabling does not affect how an item is displayed. Compare activate. (GSTR, PI)

**end-of-command mark:** A punctuation mark used to separate commands sent to a peripheral device such as a printer or plotter. Also called a command terminator. (CTR, ETR)

**end-of-line character:** A character that indicates that the preceding text constitutes a full line. (CTR, ETR)

**environment:** The complete set of machine registers associated with a running program. Saving the environment allows a program to be restored to its original operating mode with all of its registers intact as though nothing had happened. Saving and restoring an environment is most often associated with calling system functions or processing interrupts. (GSF)

**EOF (end-of-file):** The logical size of a ProDOS 16 file; it is the number of bytes that may be read from or written to the file. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**erase:** In QuickDraw II, to color an area with the background pattern. (PI)

**erasing:** In QuickDraw II, to color an area with the background pattern. (GSTR)
error: The state of a computer after it has detected a fault in one or more commands sent to it. Also called error condition. (GSF, GSTR, PI, P16)

even parity: In data transmission, the use of an extra bit set to 0 or 1 as necessary to make the total number of 1 bits an even number; used as a means of error checking. Compare MARK parity, odd parity. (CTR, ETR, GST)

even/odd parity check: In data transmission, a check that tests whether the number of 1 bits in a group of binary digits is even (even parity check) or odd (odd parity check). (CTR, ETR)

event: A notification to an application of some occurrence (such as an interrupt generated by a keypress) that the application may want to respond to. (GSTR, PI, P16)

event code: A numeric value assigned to each event by the Event Manager. Compare task code. (GSTR, PI)

Event Manager: An Apple IIJGS tool set that detects events as they happen, and passes the events on to the application or to the appropriate event handler, such as TaskMaster. (GSTR, PI)

event mask: A parameter passed to an Event Manager routine to specify which types of events the routine should apply to. (GSTR, PI)

event message: A field in the event record that contains additional information about the event. (GSTR)

event queue: A list of pending events maintained by the Event Manager. (GSTR, PI)

event record: The internal representation of an event, through which your program learns all pertinent information about that event. (GSTR, PI)

event type: The type of event reported to the Event Manager. (GSTR)

event-driven: A kind of program that responds to user inputs in real time by repeatedly testing for events posted by interrupt routines. An event-driven program does nothing until it detects an event such as a click of the mouse button. (GST, PI, P16)
**event-driven program:** A program that responds to user inputs in real time by repeatedly testing for events. An event-driven program does nothing until it detects an event such as a click of the mouse button. (GSH, GSTR)

**exclusive OR:** A logical operator that produces a true result if one of its operands is true and the other false, and a false result if its operands are both true or both false. Compare OR, AND, and NOT. (CTR, ETR)

**execute:** To perform the actions specified by a program command or sequence of commands. (CTR, ETR)

**execution environment:** Securing operating environment. (GSTR)

**execution mode:** One of two general states of execution of the 65C816 processor: native mode and 6502 emulation mode. (GSTR, PI)

**expansion slot:** A connector into which you can install a peripheral card. Sometimes called a peripheral slot. See also auxiliary slot, slot. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR)

**expression:** A formula in a program that defines a calculation to be performed. (CTR, ETR)

**Extended 80-Column Text Card:** See Apple IIe Extended 80-Column Text Card. (GST)

**extended SmartPort call:** A SmartPort call that allows data transfer to or from anywhere in the Apple II GS system memory space. Compare standard SmartPort call. (GSF)

**extended task event record:** A data structure based on the event record that contains information used and returned by TaskMaster. (GSTR, PI)

**Extended value:** An 80-bit signed floating-point value with 64 bits of fraction. (GSTR)

**external device:** See device. (GSH, P16)

**external reference:** A reference to a symbol that is defined in another segment. External references must be to global symbols. (GSH)

**FALSE:** Zero. The result of a Boolean operation. Opposite of TRUE. (GSTR, PI)

**family name:** The name identifying a font family. For example, the font family named Helvetica includes 10-point Helvetica, 12-point Helvetica Bold, and 36-point Helvetica Underlined. See also font family. (GSTR)

**family number:** The number identifying a font family. There is a one-to-one correspondence between family number and family name; that is, any two fonts with the same family number should have the same family name. (GSTR)

**FamSpecBits:** A bit flag in the Font Manager that restricts the range of font families available to a calling routine. (GSTR)

**FamStatBits:** A bit flag in the Font Manager that reports on the status of a font family. (GSTR)

**fatal error:** An error serious enough that the computer must halt execution. (GSH, P16)

**field:** A string of ASCII characters or a value that has a specific meaning to some program. Fields may be of fixed length or may be separated from other fields by field delimiters. For example, each parameter in a segment header constitutes a field. (GSF)

**FIFO:** Acronym for “first in, first out” order, as in a queue. (CTR, ETR)

**file:** A named, ordered collection of information stored on a disk. (CTR, ETR, GST, PI, P16)

**file control block (FCB):** A data structure set up in memory by ProDOS 16 to keep track of all open files. (P16)

**file entry or file directory entry:** The part of a ProDOS 16 directory or subdirectory that describes and points to another file. The file so described is considered to be “in” or “under” that directory. (P16)

**file level:** See system file level. (PI, P16)

**file mark:** See Mark. (PI)
**file system ID:** A number describing the general category of operating system to which a file or volume belongs. The file system ID is an input to the ProDOS 16 FORMAT call, and a result from the VOLUME call. (P16)

**file type:** An attribute in a ProDOS 16 file's directory entry that characterizes the contents of the file and indicates how the file may be used. On disk, file types are stored as numbers; in a directory listing, they are oGST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**filename:** The string of characters that identifies a particular file within its directory. ProDOS filenames may be up to 15 characters long. Compare pathname. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**filling calls:** Operating system calls that manipulate files. In ProDOS 16, filling calls are subdivided into file housekeeping calls and file access calls. (P16)

**fill mode:** A display option in Super Hi-Res 320 mode. In fill mode, pixels in memory with the value 0 are automatically assigned the color of the previous nonzero pixel on the scan line; the program thus need assign explicit pixel values only to change pixel colors. (GSTR, PI)

**filling:** In QuickDraw II, using a specified pattern and the drawing mask to fill the interior of a shape. (GSTR)

**filter procedure:** A procedure that allows the application programmer to control the types of events handled by the Dialog Manager. (GSTR)

**finder:** A program that performs file and disk utilities (formatting, copying, renaming, and so on) and also starts applications at the request of the user. (P16)

**firmware:** Programs stored permanently in read-only memory (ROM). Such programs (for example, the Applesoft Interpreter and the Monitor program) are built into the computer at the factory. They can be executed at any time but cannot be modified or erased from main memory. (GST)

**firmware:** Programs stored permanently in read-only memory (ROM). Such programs (for example, the Applesoft Interpreter and the Monitor program) are built into the computer at the factory. They can be executed at any time but cannot be modified or erased from main memory. Compare hardware, software. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

**fixed:** Not movable in memory once allocated. Also called immovable. Program segments that must not be moved are placed in fixed memory blocks. Opposite of movable. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**fixed address:** A memory block that must be at a specified address when allocated. (GSTR)

**fixed bank:** A block of memory that must start in a specified bank. (GSTR)

**Fixed value:** A 32-bit signed value with 16 bits of fraction. (GSTR)

**fixed-address:** A memory block that must be at a specified address when allocated. (PI)

**fixed-bank:** A block of memory that must start in a specified bank. (PI)

**fixed-point:** A method of representing numbers inside the computer in which the decimal point (more correctly, the binary point) is considered to occur at a fixed position within the number. Typically, the point is considered to lie at the right end of the number so that the number is interpreted as an integer. Compare floating-point. (CTR, ETR)

**flag:** A variable whose value (usually 1 or 0, standing for true or false) indicates whether some condition holds or whether some event has occurred. A flag is used to control the program's actions at some later time. (CTR, ETR, GSTR, PI)

**floating-point:** A method of representing numbers inside the computer in which the decimal point (more correctly, the binary point) is permitted to "float" to different positions within the number. Some of the bits within the number itself are used to keep track of the point's position. Compare fixed-point. (CTR, ETR)
floppy disk: A disk made of flexible plastic, as compared to a hard disk, which is made of metal. The term floppy is now usually applied only to disks with thin, flexible disk jackets, such as 5.25-inch disks. With 3.5-inch disks, the disk itself is flexible, but the jacket is made of hard plastic; thus, 3.5-inch disks aren’t particularly “floppy.” (CTR, ETR)

flush: To update an open file (write any updated information to disk) without closing it. (P16)

collection: The visual representation of a subdirectory. See also subdirectory. (GST, PI)

collection: In typography, a complete set of type in one size and style of character. In computer usage, a collection of letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and other typographical symbols with a consistent appearance; the size and style can be changed readily. See also font scaling. (GST, GSTR, PI)

collection bounds rectangle: The smallest rectangle that would enclose all the pixels of every character in a font; that is, the rectangle that is the union of all the character bounds rectangles of the characters in the font. (GSTR)

collection family: All fonts that share the same name but may vary in size or style. For example, all fonts named Helvetica are in the same family, even though that family contains Helvetica, Helvetica Narrow and Helvetica Bold. (GSTR, PI)

collection height: The vertical distance from a font’s ascent line to its descent line. (GSTR, PI)

collection ID: A number that specifies a font by family, style, and size. (GSTR, PI)

collection ID record: A record containing the number that specifies a font by family, style, and size. (GSTR)

Font Manager: The Apple IIGS tool set that allows applications to use different fonts. (GSTR)

collection rectangle: The smallest rectangle that would completely enclose all the foreground pixels of the characters of a font if the characters were drawn so that their character origins coincided. (GST, PI)

collection scaling: A process by which the Font Manager creates a font at one size by enlarging or reducing characters in an existing font to another size. (GST, PI)

collection size: The size of a font in points, from 1 to 255. The Font Manager defines the font size as a byte; QuickDraw II and the Apple II IIGS font record define the font size as a word. (GSTR)

collection strike: A 1 bit/pixel pixelmap consisting of the character images of every defined character in the font, placed sequentially in order of increasing ASCII code. (GST, PI)

collection style: The style in which a font was designed. The Font Manager defines the style as a byte; QuickDraw II and the Apple II IIGS font record define the font style as a word. (GSTR)

FontSpecBits: An option in the LaserWriter style dialog box in the Print Manager. This option allows the system to substitute one font for another if the specified font is not available on the LaserWriter. (GSTR)

FontStatBits: A bit flag in the Font Manager that restricts the range of fonts available to a calling routine. (GSTR)

foreground color: The color of the foreground pixels in text; by default it is white. (GST, PI)

foreground pixels: In a character image, the pixels corresponding to the character itself; that is, the bits set to 1 in the image. (GSTR)

form feed: An ASCII character (decimal 12) that causes a printer or other paper-handling device to advance to the top of the next page. (CTR, ETR)
format: (n) (1) The form in which information is organized or presented. (2) The general shape and appearance of a printed page, including page size, character width and spacing, line spacing, and so on. (v) To divide a disk into tracks and sectors where information can be stored. Blank disks must be formatted before you can save information on them for the first time; same as initialize. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST)

Fortran: Short for Formula Translator. A high-level programming language especially suitable for applications requiring extensive numerical calculations, such as in mathematics, engineering, and the sciences. (CTR, ETR)

FPI: Abbreviation for Fast Processor Interface. A custom integrated circuit that incorporates most of the memory organization and address-decoding functions of the Apple IIGS. One of this IC's functions is to slow the system clock to 1.024 MHz whenever access to banks $E0$ and $E1$ is detected. (GSH)

FPT: See function pointer table. (GSTR)

Frac value: A 32-bit signed value with 30 bits of fraction. (GSTR)

fragmentation: A condition in which free (unallocated) portions of memory are scattered due to repeated allocation and deallocation of blocks by the Memory Manager. (GSTR)

frame region: The part of a window that surrounds the window's content region and contains standard window controls. (GSTR, PI)

framing: In QuickDraw II, using the current pen size, pen pattern, drawing mask, and pen mode to draw an outline of a shape. (GSTR)

framing error: In serial data transfer, the absence of the expected stop bit(s) at the end of a received character. (CTR, ETR)

frequency: In alternating current (AC) signals, the number of complete cycles transmitted per second. Frequency is usually expressed in hertz (cycles per second), kilohertz (kilocycles per second), or megahertz (megacycles per second). In acoustics, frequency of vibration determines musical pitch. Compare duration. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

fringing: Also known as color fringing. The undesirable effect of rainbow-like colors obscuring text on the video monitor. Occurs when 80-column text is displayed in color. (GSH)

full duplex: A four-wire communication circuit or protocol that allows two-way data transmission between two points at the same time. Compare half duplex. (CTR, ETR)

full native mode: See native mode. (GSTR)

full pathname: The complete name by which a file is specified, starting with the volume directory name. A full pathname always begins with a slash (/), because a volume directory name always begins with a slash. See also pathname. (GSTR, PI)

function: A preprogrammed calculation that can be carried out on request from any point in a program. A function takes in one or more arguments and returns a single value. It can therefore be embedded in an expression. (CTR, ETR, GST)

function pointer table (FPT): A table, maintained by the Tool Locator, that points to all routines in a given tool set. (GSTR, PI)

game I/O connector: A 16-pin connector inside all the open models of the Apple II, originally designed for connecting hand controls to the computer, but also used for connecting some other peripheral devices. Compare hand control connector. (CTR, ETR, GST)

GCB: See generator control block. (GSTR)

General Logic Unit: A class of custom integrated circuits used as interfaces between different parts of the computer. (GSH)

general logic unit: See GLU. (GSTR, PI)

generator: In the swap mode of the DOC, a functional unit formed from a pair of oscillators. (GSTR)

generator control block (GCB): A 16-byte block in the sound routines' work area that controls one generator. (GSTR)
GETLN: The firmware routine that a program calls to obtain an entire line of characters from the currently active input device. (GSF)

GetNextEvent: The Event Manager call that an application can make on each cycle through its main event loop. Compare TaskMaster. (GSTR, PI)

global coordinates: The coordinate system assigned to a pixel image (such as screen memory) that QuickDraw II draws to. In global coordinates, the boundary rectangle’s origin (top left corner) has the value (0,0). Compare local coordinates. (GSTR, PI)

global page: Under ProDOS 8, 256 bytes of data at a fixed location in memory, containing useful system information (such as a list of active devices) available to any application. (P16)

global page bit map: A portion of the ProDOS 8 global page that keeps track of memory use in the computer. Applications under ProDOS 8 are responsible for marking and clearing parts of the bit map that correspond to memory they have allocated or freed. (P16)

global symbol: A label in a segment that may be referenced by other segments. Compare with local symbol, private symbol. (PI)

GLU: Abbreviation of general logic unit, a class of custom integrated circuits used as interfaces between different parts of the computer. See General Logic Unit. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

go-away region: A region in a window frame, corresponding to the close box. Clicking inside this region of the active window makes the window close or disappear. (GSTR, PI)

GrafPort: A data structure (record) that specifies a complete drawing environment, including such elements as a pixel image, boundaries within which to draw, a character font, patterns for drawing and erasing, and other pen characteristics. (GSTR, PI)

graphic: A pictorial representation of data. (CTR, ETR, GST)

graphic interface: An interface between computer and user in which all screen drawing or other output, including text, is done by graphic routines. Desktop programs use a graphic interface. Compare text-based interface. (PI)

graphic port: A specification for how and where QuickDraw II draws. A graphic port is defined by its GrafPort record; an application may have more than one graphic port open at one time, each defined by its own GrafPort. Same as drawing environment. (GSTR, PI)

graphics: (1) Information presented in the form of pictures or images. (2) The display of pictures or images on a computer’s display screen. Compare text. (CTR, ETR, GST) The display by a computer on a video monitor of data in memory, to visually represent figures, charts, graphs, or icons. In the Apple IIGS, each pixel on the monitor screen is directly controllable by bits in the screen. See also bit map. (GSH)

grow box: A small square in the lower-right corner of some windows, with which the user can resize the window. The grow box corresponds to the grow region. (PI)

grow image: A dotted outline of an entire window plus the lines delimiting the title bar, size box, and scroll bar areas. The image can be pulled around to follow the movements of the mouse until the mouse button is released. (GSTR)

grow region: A window region in which dragging changes the size of the window. (GSTR, PI)

guest file system: A file system, other than ProDOS 16’s, whose files can be read by ProDOS 16. (P16)

half duplex: A two-wire communication circuit or protocol designed for data transmission in either direction but not both directions simultaneously. Compare full duplex. (CTR, ETR)
hand control: A hand-held device with a knob and pushbutton that provides the user with a means for inputting stimuli to the computer for the purpose of controlling the application program. Usually used in conjunction with game software. Compare joystick. (GSH)

hand control connector: A 9-pin connector on the back panel of the Apple IIe and IIc computers, used for connecting hand controls to the computer. Compare game I/O connector. (CTR, ETR, GST)

hand controller: Peripheral devices, with rotating dials and push buttons. Hand controllers are used to control game-playing programs, but they can also be used in other applications. (CTR, ETR, GST)

handle: See memory handle. (GSTR, PI, P16)

handshaking: The exchange of status information between a DCE (Data Communications Equipment) and a DTE (Data Terminal Equipment), usually a computer and a peripheral device, used to control the transfer of data between them. The status information can be the state of a signal connecting the DCE and the DTE, or it can be in the form of a character transmitted with the rest of the data. See also XOFF, XON. (GSF, GSH, GST)

hang: To cease operation because either an expected condition is not satisfied or an infinite loop is occurring. A computer that's hanging is called a hung system. Compare crash. (CTR, ETR)

hard disk: A disk made of metal and sealed into a drive or cartridge. A hard disk can store very large amounts of information compared to a floppy disk. (CTR, ETR)

hard disk drive: A device that holds a hard disk, retrieves information from it, and saves information to it. Hard disks made for microprocessors are permanently sealed into the drives. (CTR, ETR)

hardware: Collectively, electronic circuit components and associated fittings and attachments. In computers, the computer itself (the processor), disk drives, and other peripheral equipment. The saying goes, "If you can touch it, it's hardware. If you can't, it's software." Compare firmware, software. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GSTR, PI)

Heartbeat Interrupt Task Queue: A list of tasks, such as cursor-movement updating or checking stack size, to be performed during vertical blanking. Heartbeat tasks are manipulated by the Miscellaneous Tool Set. (PI)

Heartbeat routines: Routines that execute at some multiple of the heartbeat interrupt signal, which occurs during the vertical blanking interval (every 1/60 of a second). (GSTR, PI)

hertz: The unit of frequency of vibration or oscillation, defined as the number of cycles per second. Named for the physicist Heinrich Hertz and abbreviated Hz. See also kilohertz, megahertz. (GST)

hertz: The unit of frequency of vibration or oscillation, defined as the number of cycles per second. Named for the physicist Heinrich Hertz and abbreviated Hz. The 6502 microprocessor used in the 8-bit Apple II systems operates at a clock frequency of about 1 million hertz, or 1 megahertz (MHz). The 68000 microprocessor used in the Macintosh operates at 7.8336 MHz. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

hex: See hexadecimal. (GSTR, PI)

hexadecimal: The base-16 system of numbers, using the ten digits 0 through 9 and the six letters A through F. Hexadecimal numbers can be converted easily and directly to binary form, because each hexadecimal digit corresponds to a sequence of 4 bits. In Apple manuals, hexadecimal numbers are usually preceded by a dollar sign ($). (CTR, ETR, GSH GST, PI, P16)
hexadecimal, hex: The representation of numbers in the base-16 system, using the ten
digits 0 through 9 and the six letters A through F. Each hexadecimal digit corresponds to a se-
quence of four binary digits, or bits.
Hexadecimal numbers are usually preceded by
a dollar sign ($). (GSTR)

Hi-Res: A high-resolution graphics display
mode on the Apple II family of computers,
consisting of an array of pixels 140 wide by 192
high in 6 colors or 280 wide by 192 high in
monochrome. (GSTR, G, GST)

hide: To make invisible (but not necessarily to
discard) an object on the screen such as a win-
dow. (GSTR, P1)

hierarchical file system: A method of
organization in which disk files are grouped to-
gether within directories and subdirectories. In
a hierarchical file system, a file is specified by
its pathname, rather than by a single filename.
(P16)

high ASCII characters: ASCII characters with
decimal values of 128 to 255. Called high ASCII
because their high bit (first binary digit) is set
to 1 (for on) rather than 0 (for off ). (CTR,
ETR)

high order: The most significant part of a nu-
merical quantity. In normal representation, the
high-order bit of a binary value is in the left-
most position; likewise, the high-order byte of
a binary word or longword quantity consists of
the leftmost 8 bits. (GSF)

high-level language: A programming lan-
guage that is relatively easy for people to un-
derstand. A single statement in a high-level lan-
guage typically corresponds to several instruc-
tions of machine language. Compare low-level
language. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

high-order: Referring to the most significant
part of a numerical quantity. In normal
representation, the high-order bit of a binary
value is in the leftmost position; likewise, the
high-order byte of a binary word or long word
consists of the leftmost 8 bits. (GSH, P16)

high-order byte: The more significant half of
a memory address or other multi-byte quantity.
In the 6502 microprocessor used in the
Apple II family of computers, the low-order
byte of an address is usually stored first, and
the high-order byte second. (In the 68000 mi-
croprocessors used in the Macintosh family,
the high-order byte is stored first.) (CTR, ETR,
GST)

high-resolution graphics: On the 8-bit
Apple II family the display of graphics on a
screen as a six-color array of points, 280
columns wide and 192 rows high. When a text
window is in use, the visible high-resolution
graphics display is 280 by 160 points. (CTR,
ETR)

highlight: To make something visually dis-
tinct. For example, when a button on a dialog
box is selected, it appears as light letters on a
dark background, rather than dark on light. An
active window or control is highlighted differ-
ently than an inactive one. (GSTR, PI)

HodgePodge: A sample Apple IIIGS desktop
application; the program described in this
book. (PI)

hold time: In computer circuits, the amount
time a signal must remain valid after some
related signal has been turned off. Compare
setup time. (CTR, ETR)

horizontal blanking: The interval between
the drawing of each scan line on a video dis-
play. (GSTR, PI)

hot spot: The interval between the drawing of
each scan line on a video display. (GSTR)

Human Interface Guidelines: A set of soft-
ware development guidelines designed by
Apple Computer to support the desktop con-
cept and to promote uniform user interfaces in
Apple II and Macintosh applications. (GSF,
GSTR, PI, P16)

Hz: See hertz. (CTR, ETR, GST)

1 flag: A bit in the 65816 microprocessor's
Processor Status register that, if set to 1, dis-
ables interrupts. (GSTR, PI)
**I/O:** Input/Output. A general term that encompasses input/output activity, the devices that accomplish it, and the data involved. See input/output. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**I/O device:** Input/output device. A device that transfers information into or out of a computer. See input, output, peripheral device. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**I/O expansion slots:** The seven rectangular connectors located on Apple II GS main logic board. These slots will accept standard Apple II peripheral cards and allow the computer to communicate with peripherals such as printers and disk drives. See also peripheral card. (GSH)

**I/O link:** A fixed location that contains the address of an input/output subroutine in the computer's Monitor program. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**I/O space:** The portion of the memory map in a standard Apple II (and in banks $00, $01, $E0, and $E1 of an Apple II GS) with addresses between $C000 and $CFFF. Programs perform I/O by writing to or reading from locations in this I/O space. (GSTR, PI)

**IC:** See integrated circuit. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, PI)

**icon:** An image that graphically represents an object, a concept, or a message. (GSF, GST, GSTR, PI)

**image:** A representation of the contents of memory. A code image consists of machine-language instructions or data that may be loaded unchanged into memory. See also pixel image. (GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

**image pointer:** In QuickDraw II, the pointer to the first byte of a pixel image. (GSTR)

**image width:** (1) Part of the QuickDraw II locInfo record that specifies the width of each line of a pixel image; the width must be an even multiple of 8 bytes. (2) For characters, same as character image width. (GSTR)

**immediate execution:** The execution of a program statement as soon as it is typed. In BASIC, immediate execution occurs when the line is typed without a line number; immediate execution allows you to try out nearly every statement immediately to see how it works. Compare deferred execution. (CTR, ETR)

**immovable:** See fixed. (GSTR)

**implement:** To put into practical effect, as to implement a plan. For example, a language translator implements a particular language. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**IN#:** This command designates the source of subsequent input characters. It can be used to designate a device in a slot or a machine-language routine as the source of input. (CTR, ETR)

**inactive:** Controls that have no meaning or effect in the current context, such as an Open button when no document has been selected to be opened. These inactive controls are not affected by the user's mouse actions and are dimmed on the screen. Compare disable. (GSTR, PI)

**index:** (1) A number used to identify a member of a list or table by its sequential position. (2) A list or table whose entries are identified by sequential position. (3) In machine-language programming, the variable component of an indexed address, contained in an index register and added to the base address to form the effective address. (CTR, ETR)

**index block:** A 512-byte part of a ProDOS 16 standard file that consists entirely of pointers to other parts (data blocks) of the file. (P16)

**index register:** A register in a computer processor that holds an index for use in indexed addressing. The 6502 and 65C816 microprocessors used in the Apple II family of computers have two index registers, called the X register and the Y register. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

**index variable:** A variable whose value changes on each pass through a loop. Often called control variable or loop variable. (CTR, ETR)
indexed addressing: A method used in machine language programming to specify memory addresses. See also memory location. (CTR, ETR, GST)

indicator: On a dial type of control, the moving part that displays the current setting. (GSTR)

infinite loop: A section of a program that will repeat the same sequence of actions indefinitely. (CTR, ETR)

information bar: An optional component of a window. If present, the information bar appears just below the title bar. It may contain any information the application that created the window wishes. (GSTR, PI)

initial load file: The first file of a program to be loaded into memory. It contains the program's main segment and the load file tables (Jump Table segment and Pathname segment) needed to load dynamic segments and run-time libraries. (P16)

initialization segment: A segment in an initial load file that is loaded and executed independently of the rest of the program. It is commonly executed first, to perform any initialization that the program may require. (GSTR, PI, P16)

initialization file: A program (in the SYSTEM.SETUP subdirectory of the boot disk) that is loaded and executed at system startup, independently of any application. (PI)

initialize: (1) To set to an initial state or value in preparation for some computation. (2) To prepare a blank disk to receive information by organizing its surface into tracks and sectors; see format. (CTR, ETR, GSF)

initialized disk: A disk that has been organized into tracks and sectors by the computer and is therefore ready to store information. (CTR, ETR)

input: (n) Information transferred into a computer from some external source, such as the keyboard, a disk drive, or a modem. (CTR, ETR, GST)

input device: The keyboard is the main input device for the Apple IIGS. Other possible input devices are the mouse and the graphics tablet. Almost any device may be used as an ADB input device, as long as it conforms to the Apple Desktop Bus protocol. Chapter 6 provides details on the ADB. (GSH)

input routine: A machine-language routine; the standard input routine reads characters from the keyboard. A different input routine might, for example, read them from an external terminal. (CTR, ETR)

input/output (I/O): The process by which information is transferred between the computer's memory and its keyboard or peripheral devices. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, P16)

insertion point: The place in a document where something will be added; it is selected by clicking and is normally represented by a blinking vertical bar. (GSTR, PI)

instruction: A unit of a machine-language or assembly-language program corresponding to a single action for the computer's processor to perform. (CTR, ETR, GST)

instrument: A data structure, used by the Note Sequencer and Synthesizer, that specifies such parameters as the amplitude envelope, pitchbend and vibrato characteristics, and the specific waveforms that characterize the sound to be played. (PI)

integer: A whole number in fixed-point form. Compare real number. (CTR, ETR, PI)

Integer BASIC: A version of the BASIC programming language used by the Apple II family of computers. Integer BASIC is older than Applesoft BASIC and is capable of processing numbers in integer (fixed-point) form only. Many games are written in Integer BASIC because its instructions can be executed very quickly. Compare Applesoft BASIC. (CTR, ETR)

Integer Math String: An ASCII string with no length indication supplied by the string itself. (GSTR)
**Integer Math Tool Set:** The Apple IIGS tool set that performs simple mathematical functions on integers and other fixed-point numbers and converts numbers to their ASCII string-equivalents. (GSTR, PI)

**Integer value:** A 16-bit signed or unsigned value. (GSTR)

**Integrated circuit:** An electronic circuit, including components and interconnections, entirely contained in a single piece of semiconducting material, usually silicon. Often referred to as an IC or a chip. (CTR, ETR, GST, PI) A miniature electronic circuit consisting of many thousands of transistors and other electronic components by processing a chip of semiconductor material. This chip is then cast in a plastic or ceramic package with metal leads or “legs” used to connect it to a circuit board. Categories of ICs are labeled due to their construction process: monolithic, hybrid, and thin-film are some. Almost any electronic circuit may be miniaturized and made into an integrated circuit. (GSH)

**Intelligent device:** A device containing a microprocessor and a program that allows the device to interpret data sent to it as commands that the device is to perform. (GSF)

**Interactive:** Operating by means of a dialog between the computer system and a human user. (GST)

**Interface:** (1) The point at which independent systems or diverse groups interact. The devices, rules, or conventions by which one component of a system communicates with another. Also, the point of communication between a person and a computer. (2) The part of a program that defines constants, variables, and data structures, rather than procedures themselves. (CTR, ETR, GST, PI)

**Interface card:** A peripheral card that implements a particular interface (such as a parallel or serial interface) by which the computer can communicate with a peripheral device such as a printer or modem. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**Interface library:** A set of variable definitions and data-structure definitions that link a program (such as a C application) with software written in another language (such as the Apple IIGS Toolbox). (GSTR, PI)

**Interpreter:** A language translator that reads a program instruction by instruction and immediately translates each instruction for the computer to carry out. Compare compiler. (CTR, ETR, GSF)

**Interrupt:** A request made of the microprocessor by a device, either built-in or external, to receive urgent data or respond to a recent event. Disk drives make interrupt requests of the microprocessor, as do the real-time clock and the mouse firmware in the Apple IIGS. (GSH, GSTR, PI, P16) A temporary suspension in the execution of a program that allows the computer to perform some other task, typically in response to a signal from a peripheral device or other source external to the computer. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**Interrupt environment:** The machine state, including register length and contents, that the interrupt handler executes within. (GSTR, PI)

**Interrupt handler:** A program, associated with a particular external device, that executes whenever that device sends an interrupt signal to the computer. The interrupt handler performs its tasks during the interrupt, then returns control to the computer so it may resume program execution. (GSF, GSH, P16)

**Interrupt mode:** A mode in which interrupts are used to synchronize drawing with vertical blanking. (GSTR)

**Interrupt vector table:** A table maintained in memory by ProDOS 16 that contains the addresses of all currently active (allocated) interrupt handlers. (GSH, P16)

**INTERSEG record:** A part of a relocation dictionary. It contains relocation information for external (intersegment) references. (P16)
**inverse video:** The display of text on the computer's display screen in the form of dark dots on a light (or other single phosphor color) background, instead of the usual light dots on a dark background. (CTR, ETR)

**invert:** To highlight by changing white pixels to black and vice versa. (PI)

**inverting:** In QuickDraw II, using the drawing mask to invert the pixels in the interior of a shape. (GSTR)

**IRQ:** A 65C816 signal line that, when activated, causes an interrupt request to be generated. (GSF)

**item:** A component of a dialog box, such as a button, a text field, or an icon. (GSTR, PI)

**item descriptor:** In a dialog box, a pointer or a handle to additional information concerning a dialog item. (GSTR)

**item ID:** A unique number that defines an item in a dialog box and allows further reference to it. (GSTR, PI)

**item line:** The line of text that defines a menu item's name and appearance. (GSTR, PI)

**item list:** A list of information about all the items in a dialog box or an alert box. (GSTR, PI)

**item template:** A record that contains information about the items in a dialog box. (GSTR)

**item type:** Identifies the type of dialog item, usually represented by a predefined constant (such as editLine) or a series of constants (such as editLine+itemDisable). (GSTR, PI)

**item value:** In a dialog box, additional information concerning a dialog item. (GSTR)

**IWM:** "Integrated Woz Machine"; the custom chip that controls Apple's 3.5-inch disk drives. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST)

**JML:** Unconditional Long Jump; a 65C816 assembly-language op code. It takes a 3-byte address operand. A JML can reach any address in the Apple IIGS memory space. (P16)

**JMP:** Unconditional Jump; a 6502 and 65C816 assembly-language op code. It takes a 2-byte address operand. A JMP can reach addresses only within a single 64K bank of the Apple IIGS memory space. (P16)

**job dialog box:** A dialog box presented when the user selects Print from the File menu. (GSTR, PI)

**job subrecord:** A field in the print record that contains information about a particular printing job. See also print record. (GSTR)

**journaling mechanism:** A mechanism that can separate the Event Manager from the user and feed the manager events from a file. (GSTR)

**joystick:** A peripheral device with a lever, typically used to move creatures and objects in game programs; a joystick can also be used in applications such as computer-aided design and graphics programs. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, PI)

**JSL:** Jump to Subroutine (Long), a 65816 assembly-language instruction that requires a long (3-byte) address. JSL can be used to transfer execution to code in another memory bank. (PI, P16, GSTR)

**JSR:** Jump to Subroutine, a 6502 and 65816 assembly-language instruction that requires a 2-byte address. (GSTR, PI, P16) A JSR can access addresses only within a single 64K bank of the Apple IIGS memory space. (P16)

**Jump Table:** (1) A table constructed in memory by the System Loader from all Jump Table segments encountered during a load. The Jump Table contains all references to dynamic segments that may be called during execution of the program. (2) The mechanism the Sound Tool Set uses to find a low-level sound routine. (GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

**Jump Table directory:** A master list in memory, containing pointers to all segments that make up the Jump Table. (P16)
Jump Table segment: A segment in a load file that contains all references to dynamic segments that may be called during execution of that load file. The Jump Table segment is created by the linker. In memory, the loader combines all Jump Table segments it encounters into the Jump Table. (GSTR, P16)

K: Abbreviation for the prefix kilo-, meaning 1024. A kilobyte (expressed 1K) of memory is 1024 memory locations. See kilobyte. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

kernel: The central part of an operating system. ProDOS 16 is the kernel of the Apple IIGS operating system. (P16)

kerning: The situation that occurs when a character has foreground pixels to the left of the old pen position or to the right of the new pen position or both. When kerning occurs, the character images of adjacent characters may overlap. (GSTR)

key block: The first block in any ProDOS 16 file. (P16)

key-down: An event type caused by the user's pressing any character key on the keyboard or keypad. The character keys include all keys except Shift, Caps Lock, Control, Option, and Apple, which are called modifier keys. Modifier keys are treated differently and generate no keyboard events of their own. (PI)

key-down event: An event type caused by the user pressing any character key on the keyboard or keypad. The character keys include all keys except Shift, Caps Lock, Control, Option, and Apple, which are called modifier keys. Modifier keys are treated differently and generate no keyboard events of their own. (GSTR)

keyboard: The set of keys, similar to a typewriter keyboard, used for entering information into the computer. (CTR, ETR, GST)

keyboard equivalent: The combination of the Apple key and another key, used to invoke a menu item from the keyboard. (GSTR, PI)

keyboard input connector: The connector inside the Apple II family of computers by which the keyboard is connected to the computer. (CTR, ETR)

KEYIN: The firmware entry point that a program calls to obtain a keystroke from the currently active input device (normally the keyboard). (GSF)

keyword: A special word or sequence of characters that identifies a particular type of statement or command, such as RUN, BRUN, or PRINT. (CTR, ETR)

kilobit: A unit of measurement, 1024 bits, commonly used in specifying the capacity of memory ICs. Not to be confused with kilobyte. (GSF, GSH, GST)

kilobyte: A unit of measurement, 1024 bytes, commonly used in specifying the capacity of memory or disk storage systems. In this usage, kilo (from the Greek, meaning a thousand) stands for 1024. Thus, 64K memory equals 65,536 bytes. See also megabyte. Compare kilobit. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

kilohertz: A unit of measurement of frequency, equal to 1000 hertz (abbreviated kHz). See also megahertz. (GSF, GSH, GST)

kind: See segment kind. (PI, P16)

KSW: The symbolic name of the location in the computer's memory where the standard input link (namely, to the keyboard) is stored. KSW stands for keyboard switch. (CTR, ETR, GST)

landscape mode: A printing mode in which text is printed top to bottom (that is, longways) on the paper. (GSTR)

language: See programming language. (CTR, ETR, GST)
**language card:** Memory with addresses between $D000$ and $FFFF$ in any Apple II-family computer. It includes two RAM banks in the $Dxxx$ space, called bank-switched memory. The language card was originally a peripheral card for the 48K Apple II or Apple II Plus that expanded the computer's memory capacity to 64K and provided space for an additional dialect of BASIC. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, PI, P16)

**language translator:** A system program that reads another program written in a particular programming language and either executes it directly or converts it into some other language (such as machine language) for later execution. See interpreter, compiler, assembler. (CTR, ETR)

**language-card memory:** Memory with addresses between $D000$ and $FFFF$ on any Apple II-family computer. It includes two RAM banks in the $Dxxx$ space, called bank-switched memory. The language card was originally a peripheral card for the 48K Apple II or Apple II Plus computer that expanded the computer's memory capacity to 64K and provided space for an additional dialect of BASIC. (GSF)

**last-changeable location:** The last location whose value the user inquired about through the Monitor. (GSF)

**leading:** (Pronounced LED-ing.) The space between lines of text. It is the number of pixels vertically between the descent line of one character and the ascent line of the character immediately beneath it. (GSTR, PI)

**leading zero:** A zero occurring at the beginning of a decimal number, deleted by most computing programs. (CTR, ETR)

**least significant bit:** The rightmost bit of a binary number. The least significant bit contributes the smallest quantity to the value of the number. Compare most significant bit. (CTR, ETR)

**leftward kern:** For characters, the distance in pixels from the character origin to the left edge of the character. (GSTR)

**length byte:** The first byte of a Pascal string. It specifies the length of the string, in bytes. (GSTR, PI)

**level:** See system file level. (P16)

**library (or library file):** An object file containing program segments, each of which can be used in any number of programs. The linker can search through the library file for segments that have been referenced in the program source file. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**library dictionary segment:** The first segment of a library file; it contains a list of all the symbols in the file together with their locations in the file. The linker uses the library dictionary segment to find the segments it needs. (PI)

**LIFO:** Acronym for “first in, last out” order, as in a stack. (CTR, ETR)

**limit rectangle:** The rectangle that limits the travel of a region that is being dragged with the mouse. (GSTR)

**line:** In QuickDraw II, an infinitely thin graphic object that is represented by its ends, which are defined by two points. (GSTR, PI) Also see program line. (CTR, ETR)

**line feed:** An ASCII character (decimal 10) that ordinarily causes a printer or video display to advance to the next line. (CTR, ETR)

**line height:** The total amount of vertical space from line to line in a text document. Line height is the sum of ascent, descent, and leading. (GST, GSTR, PI)

**line number:** A number identifying a program line in an Applesoft BASIC program. (CTR, ETR)

**line width:** The number of characters that fit on a line on the screen or on a page. (CTR, ETR)

**LineEdit Tool Set:** The Apple IIGS tool set that provides simple text-editing functions. It is used mostly in dialog boxes. (GSTR, PI)
**link**: An area in memory that contains an address and a jump instruction. Programs are written to jump to the link address. Other programs can modify this address to make everything behave differently. COUT and KEYIN are examples of I/O links. (GSF)

**Linked**: A command language that can be used to control the APW Linker. (PI)

**linker**: A program that combines files generated by compilers and assemblers, resolves all symbolic references, and generates a file that can be loaded into memory and executed. (P16, PI)

**Lisa**: A model of Apple computer; the first computer that offered windows and the use of a mouse to choose commands. The Lisa is now known as the Macintosh XL. (PI)

**list**: As defined by the List Manager, a scrollable, vertical arrangement of similar items on the screen; the items are selectable by the user. See list control. (GSTR, PI) To display on a monitor, or print on a printer, the contents of memory or of a file. (CTR, ETR)

**list control**: A custom control created by the List Manager. It is a scrollable, vertical arrangement of similar items on the screen; the items are selectable by the user. (GSTR, PI)

**list control record**: A data structure that defines the appearance of a list control after the control has been created. (GSTR)

**List Manager**: The Apple IIIGS Tool set that allows an application to present the user with a list from which to choose (for example, the Font Manager uses the List Manager to arrange lists of fonts). (GSTR, PI)

**list record**: A data structure that defines the initial appearance of a list control. (GSTR)

**Lo-Res**: The lowest resolution graphics display mode on the Apple II family of computers, consisting of an array of blocks 48 high by 40 wide with 16 colors. (GSF, GSH, GST)

**load**: To transfer information from a peripheral storage medium (such as a disk) into main memory for use—for example, to transfer a program into memory for execution. (CTR, ETR, GST, PI)

**load file**: The output of the linker. Load files contain memory images that the system loader can load into memory, together with relocation dictionaries that the loader uses to relocate references. (PI, P16)

**load segment**: A segment in a load file. Any number of object segments can go into the same load segment. (PI, P16)

**loader**: A program that brings files from a disk into the computer's memory. (GST)

**local**: Connected to or close by the host system. (CTR)

**local area network**: A high-speed data communication channel that provides connections between computers, disk drives, printers, and other peripherals in a limited geographic area, such as within a single building or campus. (GSH)

**local coordinates**: A coordinate system unique to each GrafPort and independent of the global coordinates of the pixel image that the port is associated with. For example, local coordinates do not change as a window is dragged across the screen; global coordinates do not change as a window's contents are scrolled. (GSTR, PI)

**local symbol**: A label defined only within an individual segment. Other segments cannot reference the label. Compare with global symbol. (PI)

**location**: See memory location. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**location table**: In a font, an array of integers with an entry for each character code. (GSTR)

**locInfo**: Acronym for location information. The data structure (record) that ties the coordinate plane to an individual pixel image in memory. (GSTR, PI)
lock: To prevent a memory block from being moved or purged. A block may be locked or unlocked by a call to the Memory Manager. (GSTR, PI, P16)

logic: (1) In microcomputers, a mathematical treatment of formal logic using a set of symbols to represent quantities and relationships that can be translated into switching circuits, or gates. AND, OR, and NOT are examples of logical gates. Each gate has two states, open or closed, allowing the application of binary numbers for solving problems. (2) The systematic scheme that defines the interactions of signals in the design of an automatic data processing system. (CTR, ETR)

logic board: See main logic board. (CTR, ETR, GST)

logical operator: An operator, such as AND, that combines logical values to produce a logical result, such as true or false; sometimes called a Boolean operator. Compare arithmetic operator, relational operator. (CTR, ETR)

long (or long word): A double-length word. For the Apple IIIGS, a long word is 32 bits (4 bytes) long. (GSH, PI)

Longint value: A 32-bit signed or unsigned value. (GSTR)

loop: A section of a program that is executed repeatedly until a limit or condition is met, such as an index variable's reaching a specified ending value. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

loop variable: See index variable. (CTR, ETR)

low order: The least significant part of a numerical quantity. In normal representation, the low-order bit of a binary number is in the rightmost position; likewise, the low-order byte of a binary word or long word consists of the rightmost 8 bits. (GSF)

low-level language: A programming language that is relatively close to the form the computer's processor can execute directly. One statement in a low-level language corresponds to a single machine-language instruction. Compare high-level language. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

low-order: Referring to the least significant part of a numerical quantity. In normal representation, the low-order bit of a binary number is in the rightmost position; likewise, the low-order byte of a binary word or long word consists of the rightmost 8 bits. (GSH, P16)

low-order byte: The least significant byte of a memory address or other multi-byte quantity. In the 6502 and 65C816 microprocessors used in the Apple II family of computers, the low-order byte of an address is usually stored first, and the high-order byte last. (In the 68000 microprocessors used in the Macintosh family, the high-order byte is stored first.) (GST, CTR, ETR)

low-power Schottky (LS): A type of transistor-transistor logic (TTL) integrated circuit having lower power and higher speed than a conventional TTL integrated circuit, named for Walter Schottky (1886-1956), a semiconductor physicist. (CTR, ETR)

low-resolution graphics: The display of graphics on a display screen as a 16-color array of blocks, 40 columns wide and 48 rows high. For example, on a Macintosh when the text window is in use, the visible low-resolution graphics display is 40 by 40 plotting points—that is, 40 by 40 pixels. See high-resolution graphics. (CTR, ETR)

LS: See low-power Schottky. (CTR, ETR)

m flag: One of three flags in the 65816 microprocessor's Processor Status register that controls execution mode. When the m flag is set to 1, the accumulator is 8 bits wide; otherwise, it is 16 bits wide. See also e flag, x flag. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

machine language: The form in which instructions to a computer are stored in memory for direct execution by the computer's processor. Each model of computer processor (such as the 6502 microprocessor used in 8-bit Apple II computers) has its own form of machine language. (CTR, ETR, GST)
Macintosh: A family of Apple computers built around 68000 microprocessors, having high-resolution black-and-white displays and using mouse devices for choosing commands and for drawing pictures. (GST, GSTR, PI)

macro: A single keystroke or command that a program replaces with several keystrokes or commands. For example, the APW Editor allows you to define macros that execute several editor keystroke commands; the APW Assembler allows you to define macros that execute instructions and directives. Macros are almost like higher-level language instructions, making assembly-language programs easier to write and complex keystrokes easier to execute. (GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

macro assembler: A type of assembler that allows the programmer to define sequences of several assembly-language instructions as single pseudo-instructions called macros. (GST)

macro library: A file of related macros. (GSTR, PI)

main event loop: The central routine of an event-driven program. During execution, the program continually cycles through the main event loop, branching off to handle events as they occur and then returning to the event loop. (GSTR, PI)

main logic board: A large circuit board that holds RAM, ROM, the microprocessor, custom integrated circuits, and other components that make the computer a computer. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

main memory: The part of a computer's memory whose contents are directly accessible to the microprocessor; usually synonymous with random-access memory (RAM). Programs are loaded into main memory, and that's where the computer keeps information while you're working. Sometimes simply called memory. See also read-only memory, read-write memory. (CTR, ETR, GST)

main segment: The first static segment (other than initialization segments) in the initial load file of a program. It is loaded at startup and never removed from memory until the program terminates. (P16)

mainframe computer: A central processing unit or computer that is larger and more powerful than a minicomputer or a personal computer (microcomputer). Frequently called simply a mainframe for short. The Apple Access II program and MacTerminal make it possible to communicate with mainframe computers over telecommunications media. (CTR, ETR)

mainID: A subfield of the User ID. Each running program is assigned a unique mainID. (GSTR, PI, P16)

manager: See tool set. (GSTR, PI)

Mark: The current position in an open file. It is the point in the file at which the next read or write operation will occur. (PI, P16)

Mark List: A table maintained in memory by the System Loader to help it perform relocation rapidly. (P16)

MARK parity: A bit of value 1 appended to a binary number for transmission. The receiving device checks for errors by looking for this value on each character. Compare even parity, odd parity. (CTR, ETR, GST)

mask: (n) A parameter, typically one or more bytes long, whose individual bits are used to permit or block particular features. See, for example, event mask. (v) To apply a mask. (GSTR, PI)

master color value: A 2-byte number that specifies the relative intensities of the red, green, and blue signals output by the Apple IIGS video hardware. (GSTR, PI)

master index block: The key block in a ProDOS 16 tree file, the largest organization of a standard file that ProDOS 16 can support. The master index block consists solely of pointers to one or more index blocks. (P16)
**master pointer**: A pointer to a memory block; it is kept by the Memory Manager. Each allocated memory block has a master pointer, but the block is normally accessed through its memory handle (which points to the master pointer), rather than through the master pointer itself. See also memory handle. (GSTR, P16)

**master User ID**: The value of a User ID, disregarding the contents of the auxID field. If an application allocates various memory blocks and assigns them unique ID's consisting of different auxID values added to its own User ID, then all will share the same Master User ID and all can be purged or disposed with a single call. (GSTR, PI)

Mb: See megabyte. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**Mega II**: A custom large-scale integrated circuit that incorporates most of the timing and control circuits of the standard Apple II. It addresses 128K of RAM organized as 64K main and auxiliary banks and provides the standard Apple II video display modes, both text (40-column and 80-column) and graphics (Lo-Res, Hi-Res, and Double Hi-Res). (GSF, GSH, GST)

megabit: A unit of measurement equal to 1,048,576 (216) bits, or 1024 kilobits. Megabits are commonly used in specifying the capacity of memory integrated circuits. Not to be confused with megabyte. (GSF, GSH, GST, P16)

megabyte: 1,048,576 bytes or 1024 kilobytes, usually used to describe a range or size of memory. Compare megabit. (GSH)

**megabyte**: A unit of measurement equal to 1,048,576 (216) bytes, or 1024 kilobytes. Megabytes are commonly used in specifying the capacity of memory or disk storage systems. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, PI)

megahertz (MHz): A unit of measurement of frequency, equal to 1,000,000 hertz (cycles per second). (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

memory: A hardware component of a computer system that can store information for later retrieval. See main memory, random-access memory, read-only memory, read-write memory. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

**memory attributes word**: A word that determines how a specified memory block is allocated and maintained. (GSTR)

**memory block**: See block (2). (GSF, GSTR, PI, P16)

**memory expansion card**: A slot card that contains additional RAM and ROM memory. In the Apple IIGS, this optional expansion card is to be used only in the memory expansion slot. Memory expansion cards for use in the Apple IIe are not to be used in this computer. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI)

**memory expansion slot**: The single slot located on the Apple IIGS main logic board which accepts an Apple IIGS memory expansion card. Memory expansion cards designed for other Apple II computers will not work in this slot. (GSH)

**memory fragmentation**: A condition in which free (unallocated) portions of memory are scattered because of repeated allocation and deallocation of blocks by the Memory Manager. See fragmentation. (GSTR, PI)

**memory handle**: A number that identifies a memory block. A handle is a pointer to a pointer, it is the address of a master pointer, which in turn contains the address of the block. Also called simply handle. (GSTR, PI) The identifying number of a particular block of memory. It is a pointer to the master pointer to the memory block. A handle rather than a simple pointer is needed to reference a movable memory block; that way the handle will always be the same though the value of the pointer may change as the block is moved around. (P16)

**memory image**: See image. (PI)

**memory location**: A unit of main memory that is identified by an address and can hold a single item of information of a fixed size. In the Apple II family of computers, a memory location holds one byte, or eight bits, of information. (CTR, ETR, GST)
**Memory Manager:** A program in the Apple IIGS Toolbox that manages memory use. The Memory Manager keeps track of how much memory is available and allocates memory blocks to hold program segments or data. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**Memory Segment Table:** A linked list in memory, created by the loader, that allows the loader to keep track of the segments that have been loaded into memory. (PI, P16)

**memory-mapped I/O:** The method used for I/O operations in Apple II computers, where certain memory locations are attached to I/O devices, and I/O operations are just memory load and store instructions. (GSF, GSH, GST)

**memory-resident:** (adj) (1) Stored permanently in memory as firmware (ROM). (2) Held continually in RAM even while not in use. DOS is a memory-resident program. Compare disk-resident. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**menu:** A list of choices presented by a program, from which the user can select an action. See also pull-down menu. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

**menu bar:** The horizontal strip at the top of the screen that contains menu titles for the pull-down menus. (GST, GSTR, PI)

**menu bar record:** A data structure that contains the menu position, color, menu lists, item lists, and other flags the Menu Manager needs to manage menus. (GSTR)

**menu definition procedure:** A procedure used to define the appearance and behavior of a custom menu. (GSTR)

**menu ID:** A number in the menu record that identifies an individual menu. (GSTR, PI)

**menu item:** On a menu, the text of a command or a line dividing groups of choices. (GSTR)

**menu line:** A line of text plus code characters that defines the appearance of a particular menu title. (GSTR, PI)

**Menu Manager:** The Apple IIGS Tool Set that maintains the pull-down menus and the items in the menus. (GSTR, PI)

**menu record:** A data structure that provides information about one of the menus in a menu bar. (GSTR)

**menu title:** A word, phrase, or icon in the menu bar that designates one menu. Pressing on the menu title causes the title to be highlighted and its menu to appear below it. (GST)

**MHz:** Abbreviation for megahertz, one million hertz. See hertz. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

**microcomputer:** Any small computer whose central processing element is contained on a single small circuit board or within a single integrated circuit. (CTR, ETR, GSH)

**microprocessor:** The heart of a microcomputer. Usually, a single-chip computer element that contains the control unit, central processing circuitry, and arithmetic and logic functions and is suitable for use as the central processing unit of a microcomputer or a dedicated automatic control system. In the Apple IIGS computer, the microprocessor is the 65C816. Previous Apple II computers utilize the 6502 and 65C02 microprocessors. Some microprocessors used in other computers are the 68000, the 8080, the Z80, and the 8086. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

**microsecond:** One millionth of a second. Abbreviated μs. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**millisecond:** One thousandth of a second. Abbreviated ms. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**mini-assembler:** A part of the Apple IIGS Monitor program that allows the user to create small assembly-language test routines. See also assembler. (GSF)

**minimum blink interval:** The minimum time between blinks of the caret. (GSTR)

**minimum version number:** The minimum version of a particular tool set that an application needs to function. (GSTR)

**minipalette:** In Super Hi-Res 640 mode, a quarter of the color table. Each pixel in 640 mode can have one of four colors specified in a minipalette. (GSTR, PI)
Miscellaneous Tool Set: The Apple IIGS tool set that includes mostly system-level routines that must be available for other tool sets. (GSTR, PI)

missing character: In a font, a character that does not have a defined symbol. (GSTR)

missing symbol: In a font, the symbol substituted for any ASCII value for which the font does not have a defined symbol. In the Apple IIGS system font, the missing symbol is a box containing a question mark. (GSTR, PI)

MLI: Machine Language Interface—the part of ProDOS 8 that processes operating system calls. (P16)

modal dialog box: A dialog box that puts the machine in a state where the user cannot execute functions outside of the dialog box until the dialog box is closed. Compare modeless dialog box. (GSTR, PI)

mode: A state of a computer or system that determines its behavior. A manner of operating. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GSTR, PI)

modeless dialog box: A dialog box that does not require the user to respond before doing anything else. Unlike a modal dialog box, it is possible to keep working even if the box is still in use. Compare modal dialog box. (GSTR, PI)

modem: Acronym for modulator-demodulator. A computer peripheral device that allows computers to transfer digital information over conventional telephone lines. Modems usually connect to the computer's serial port, but may instead plug into a peripheral expansion slot. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

modification date: An attribute of a ProDOS 16 file; it specifies the date on which the content of the file was last changed. (PI, P16)

modification time: An attribute of a ProDOS 16 file; it specifies the time at which the content of the file was last changed. (PI, P16)

modifier key: A key (Apple, Caps Lock, Control, Option, Shift) that generates no keyboard events of its own, but changes the meaning of other keys or mouse actions. Also called a control key. (CTR, ETR, GSTR)

modulate: To modify or alter a signal so as to transmit information. For example, conventional broadcast radio transmits sound by modulating the amplitude (amplitude modulation, or AM) or the frequency (frequency modulation, or FM) of a carrier signal. (CTR, ETR)

monitor: See video monitor. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, P16)

Monitor program: A firmware program built into the firmware of Apple II computers, used for directly inspecting or changing the contents of main memory and for operating the computer at the machine-language level. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST, PI, P15)

monochrome: Displaying video in one color and the background in another, frequently black and white, but not necessarily. The Apple IIGS monochrome default is white characters on a medium blue background. (GSH)

monospaced: Said of a font whose character widths are all identical. Compare proportionally spaced. (GSTR, PI)

MOS: Abbreviation for metal oxide silicon, a method of semiconductor integrated-circuit fabrication on silicon using layers of silicon dioxide in the make-up of the devices. Compare CMOS. (GSF, GSH, GST, PI)

most significant bit: The leftmost bit of a binary number. The most significant bit contributes the largest quantity to the value of the number. For example, in the binary number 10110 (decimal value 22), the leftmost bit has the decimal value 16 (24). Compare least significant bit. (CTR, ETR)

mouse: A small device you move around on a flat surface next to your computer. The mouse controls a pointer on the screen whose movements correspond to those of the mouse. You use the pointer to select menu items, to move data, and to draw with in graphics programs. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)
**mouse button:** The button on the top of the mouse. In general, pressing the mouse button initiates some action on whatever is under the pointer, and releasing the button confirms the action. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

**mouse clamps:** Values that establish the minimum and maximum X and Y coordinates for the mouse. (GSTR)

**mouse-down:** An action or an event, signifying that the user has pressed the mouse button. (GSTR, PI)

**mouse-up:** An action or an event, signifying that the user has released the mouse button. (GSTR, PI)

**movable:** A memory block attribute, indicating that the Memory Manager is free to move the block. Opposite of fixed. Only position-independent program segments may be in movable memory blocks. A block is made movable or fixed through Memory Manager calls. The opposite of fixed. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**move:** To change the location of a group of data bytes in memory. The Memory Manager may move blocks to consolidate memory space. (GSH, P16)

**nanosecond:** One billionth of a second. Abbreviated ns. (CTR, ETR)

**native mode:** The 16-bit configuration of the 65C816 microprocessor. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

**NDA:** See new desk accessory. (GSTR, PI)

**nested loop:** A loop contained within the body of another loop and executed repeatedly during each pass through the outer loop. See loop. (CTR, ETR)

**nested subroutine call:** A call to a subroutine from within the body of another subroutine. (CTR, ETR)

**new desk accessory (NDA):** A desk accessory designed to execute in a desktop, event-driven environment. Compare classic desk accessory. (GSTR, PI)

**newline (read) mode:** A file-reading mode in which each character read from the file is compared to a specified character (called the newline character); if there is a match, the read is terminated. Newline mode is typically used to read individual lines of text, with the newline character defined as a carriage return. (PI, P16)

**NewWindow parameter list:** A template describing the features of a window that is to be created. A pointer to a NewWindow parameter list is a required input to the NewWindow call. (PI)

**next-changeable location:** The memory location that is next to have its value changed. (GSF)

**nibble:** A unit of data equal to half a byte, or four bits. A nibble can hold any value from 0 to 15 ($0$ and $7$ hexadecimal). (CTR, ETR, P16)

**NIL:** Pointing to a value of 0. A memory handle is NIL if the address it points to is filled with zeros. Handles to purged memory blocks are NIL. Compare null. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**NMOS:** One of several methods of making integrated circuits out of silicon; a metal-oxide semiconductor device made on a p-type substrate using n-type source and drain contacts. (GSH)

**nonspecial, normal memory:** Memory that has no special restrictions on it. On the Apple II GS, such memory includes banks $2$–$8$ and parts of banks $8$–$10$ and $8$–$12$. (GSTR)

**NOT:** A unary logical operator that produces a true result if its operand is false, and a false result if its operand is true. Compare AND, OR, exclusive OR. (CTR, ETR)

**Note Sequencer:** The Apple II GS tool set that makes it possible to play music asynchronously in programs. (GSTR, PI)

**Note Synthesizer:** An Apple II GS tool set that facilitates creation and manipulation of musical notes. (GSTR, PI)
**OMF**: See object module format. (GSTR, Pl)

**OMF file**: Any file in object module format. (P16)

**op code**: See operation code. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, P16)

**open**: To allow access to a file. A file may not be read from or written to until it is open. (P16)

**Open Apple key**: A modifier key on some Apple II-family keyboards; on the Apple IIIGS keyboard, the equivalent key is marked with both an Apple icon and a spinner, the icon used on some Macintosh keyboards, and called simply the Apple key. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

**operand**: (1) In assembly language, the part of an instruction that follows the operation code. The operand is used as a value or an address, or to calculate a value or an address. (2) In object module format, an operation code that is followed by a single value that constitutes part of an expression. The value following the operand opcode is acted on by an operator. (GSH, P16) A value to which an operator is applied. The value on which an operation code operates. Compare argument. (CTR, ETR) An item on which an operator (such as + or AND) acts. (GSF)

**operating environment**: The overall hardware and software setting within which a program runs. Also called execution environment. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**operating system**: A general-purpose program that manages the actions of the parts of the computer and its peripheral devices for the benefit of the application programs. See disk operating system. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**operating system call**: A request to execute a named operating system function; also, the name of the function itself. OPEN, GET_FILE_INFO, and QUIT are ProDOS 16 operating system calls. (P16)

**operation code**: The part of a machine-language instruction that specifies the operation to be performed. Often called op code. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, P16)
operator: A symbol or sequence of characters, such as + or AND, specifying an operation to be performed on one or more values (the operands) to produce a result. See arithmetic operator, relational operator, logical operator, unary operator, binary operator. (CTR, ETR, GSH)

option: (1) Something chosen or available as a choice; for instance, items in a menu. (2) An argument whose provision is optional. (CTR, ETR)

OR: A logical operator that produces a true result if either or both of its operands are true, and a false result if both of its operands are false. Compare exclusive OR, AND, NOT. (CTR, ETR)

origin: (1) The first memory address of a program or of a portion of one. The first instruction to be executed. (2) The location (0,0) on the QuickDraw II coordinate plane, in either global coordinates or local coordinates. (3) The upper-left corner of any rectangle (such as a boundary rectangle or port rectangle) in QuickDraw II. (4) See character origin. (GSTR, PI)

oscillator: A device that generates a vibration. In the Apple IIGS digital oscillator chip, an oscillator is an address generator that points to the next data byte in memory that represents part of a particular sound wave. (GSH, GSTR, PI)

output: Information transferred from a computer to some external destination, such as the display screen, a disk drive, a printer, or a modem. (CTR, ETR)

output routine: A machine-language routine that performs the sending of characters. The standard output routine sends characters to the screen. A different output routine might, for example, send them to a printer. (CTR, ETR)

oval: A circle or an ellipse, one of the fundamental classes of objects drawn by QuickDraw II. (GSTR, PI)

overflow: The condition that exists when an attempt is made to put more data into a given memory area than it can hold; for example, a computational result that exceeds the allowed range. (CTR, ETR)

overlay: One of a set of program segments meant to alternately occupy the same memory space. Use of overlays is one way to minimize the amount of memory a program needs. (PI)

override: To modify or cancel an instruction by issuing another one. (CTR, ETR)

overrun: A condition that occurs when the processor does not retrieve a received character from the receive data register of the Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter (ACIA) before the subsequent character arrives. The ACIA automatically sets bit 2 (OVR) of its status register; subsequent characters are lost. The receive data register contains the last valid data word received. (CTR, ETR, GST)

P register: See status register. (PI)

pack: To compress data into a smaller space to conserve storage space. (GSTR, PI)

page: (1) A portion of memory 256 bytes long and beginning at an address that is an even multiple of 256. Memory blocks whose starting addresses are an even multiple of 256 are said to be page-aligned. (2) (usually capitalized) An area of main memory containing text or graphic information being displayed on the screen. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16) (1) A screenful of information on a video display. In the Apple II family of computers, a page consists of 24 lines of 40 or 80 characters each. (2) An area of main memory containing text or graphical information being displayed on the screen. (3) A segment of main memory 256 bytes long and beginning at an address that is an even multiple of 256. (CTR, ETR)

page zero: See zero page. (CTR, ETR, GST)

page-aligned: Said of a memory block that starts at a memory address that is an even multiple of 256 (a memory block attribute). See also page (1). (GSTR, PI)
**paging region:** In a scroll bar, the area a user clicks to move the view of the data a page at a time. (GSTR)

**painting:** In QuickDraw II, using the current pen pattern, drawing mask, and pen mode to fill the interior of a shape. (GSTR)

**PAL:** Acronym for phase alternating lines. A video standard originated in England and used in other European countries. (GSH)

**palette:** The set of colors from which the user can choose a color to apply to a pixel on the screen. (GSF, GSTR, PI)

**parallel:** (1) The simultaneous occurrence of more than one phenomenon. (2) The connection of a group of wires for the purpose of conducting bits of data simultaneously, rather than one at a time (via a serial connection). (GSH)

**parallel interface:** An interface in which several bits of information (typically 8 bits, or 1 byte) are transmitted simultaneously over different wires or channels. Compare serial interface. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**parameter:** An argument that determines the outcome of a command. For example, in the command write(n,msg), n and msg are parameters. (GSF, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**parameter block:** A set of contiguous memory locations set up by a calling program to pass parameters to and receive results from an operating-system function that the program calls. Every call to SmartPort must include a pointer to a properly constructed parameter block. (GSF, P16)

**parameter RAM:** RAM on the Apple IIIGS clock chip. A battery preserves the clock settings and the RAM contents when the power is off. Control Panel settings are kept in battery RAM. (GSTR, PI)

**parity:** Sameness of level or count, usually the count of 1 bits in each character, used for error checking in data transmission. See even parity, MARK parity, odd parity, parity bit. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**parity bit:** A bit that is sometimes transmitted along with the other bits that define a serial character. It is used to check the accuracy of the transmission of the character. Even parity means that the total number of 1 bits transmitted, including the parity bit itself, is even. Odd parity means that the total number is odd. The parity bit is generated individually for each character and checked at the receiving end. (GSF, GST)

**part code:** A number between 1 and 255 that stands for a particular part of a control. The Control Manager uses part codes to allow different parts of a control to respond in different ways. (GSTR)

**partial pathname:** A pathname that includes the filename of the desired file but excludes the volume directory name (and possibly one or more of the subdirectories in the path). It is the part of a pathname following a prefix—a prefix and a partial pathname together constitute a full pathname. A partial pathname does not begin with a slash because it has no volume directory name. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**Pascal:** A high-level programming language with statements that resemble English phrases. Pascal was designed to teach programming as a systematic approach to problem solving. Named after the philosopher and mathematician Blaise Pascal. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

**Pascal string:** An ASCII character string preceded by a single byte whose numerical value is the number of characters in the string. Compare C string. (GSTR, PI)

**Pascal-type string:** Same as Pascal string. (GSTR)

**pass:** A single execution of a loop. (CTR, ETR)

**paste:** To place the desk scrap (contents of the Clipboard—whatever was last cut or copied) at the insertion point. (GSTR, PI)
**patch**: To replace one or more bytes in memory or in a file with other values. The address to which the program must jump to execute a subroutine is patched into memory at load time, when the System Loader performs relocation on a file. (PI, P16)

**pathname**: A name that specifies a file. It is a sequence of one or more filenames separated by slashes, tracing the path through subdirectories that a program must follow to locate the file. See full pathname, partial pathname, prefix. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**pathname prefix**: See prefix. (GSTR, PI)

**Pathname segment**: segment in a load file that contains the cross-references between load files referenced by number (in the Jump Table segment) and their pathnames (listed in the file directory). The Pathname segment is created by the linker. (P16)

**Pathname Table**: A table constructed in memory by the System Loader. The Pathname Table contains cross-references between load files referenced by number (in the Jump Table) and by pathname (in the file directory). (PI, P16)

**pattern**: (1) An 8-by-8 pixel image, used to define a repeating design (such as stripes) or color. (2) A series of commands to the Note Synthesizer. (GSTR, PI)

**PB register**: See program bank register. (GSTR, PI)

**PB register**: See program bank register. (PI)

**PC board**: See printed-circuit board. (CTR, ETR)

**PC register**: A register within the 65816 microprocessor that keeps track of the memory address of the next instruction to be executed. PC stands for program counter. (GSTR, PI)

**peek**: To read information directly from a location in the computer's memory. (CTR, ETR)

**pen**: The conceptual tool with which QuickDraw II draws shapes and characters. Each GrafPort has its own pen. (GSTR, PI)

**pen location**: The position (on the coordinate plane) at which the next character or line will be drawn. (GSTR, PI)

**pen mode**: One of several Boolean operations that determine how the pen pattern is to affect an existing image. Compare text mode. (GSTR)

**pen pattern**: See pattern (1). (GSTR, PI)

**pen size**: The size of the rectangle that will be used as the drawing pen. (GSTR)

**peripheral**: (adj) At or outside the boundaries of the computer itself, either physically (as a peripheral device) or in a logical sense (as a peripheral card). (n) Short for peripheral device. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**peripheral bus**: The bus used for transmitting information between the computer and peripheral devices connected to the computer's expansion slots or ports. (CTR, ETR)

**peripheral card**: A hardware device placed inside a computer and connected to one of the computer's peripheral expansion slots. Peripheral cards perform a variety of functions, from controlling a disk drive to providing a clock/calendar. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI) A removable printed-circuit board that plugs into one of the seven I/O expansion slots, allowing the computer to use a peripheral device or to perform some subsidiary or peripheral function. These cards may be self-contained (such as a clock card) or an interface card (such as a disk interface card) with a cable connecting the card and the peripheral. (GSH)
**Peripheral device**: A piece of hardware—such as a video monitor, disk drive, printer, or modem—used in conjunction with a computer and under the computer's control. Peripheral devices are often (but not necessarily) physically separate from the computer and connected to it by wires, cables, or some other form of interface. They often require peripheral cards. See device. (CTR, ETR, GST) An input or output (or input/output) device, usually external to the computer (but which may reside on a card in a peripheral-expansion slot), that performs some secondary function for the computer. Printers, disk drives, modems, and video monitors are examples of peripheral devices. See device. (GSH, GSTR, PI)

**Peripheral expansion slot**: The seven slots at the rear of the main logic board that will accept most Apple II peripheral expansion cards. Each slot has 50 pins, which carry required power and signals to and from the peripheral cards. (GSH)

**Peripheral slot**: See expansion slot. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**Phase**: (1) A stage in a periodic process. A point in a cycle. For example, the 6502 and 65C816 microprocessors use a clock cycle consisting of two phases called F0 and F1. (2) The relationship between two periodic signals or processes. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

**Phrase**: In music synthesis, a set of pointers to patterns that make it easy to build repetitive, complex passages out of simple patterns. (PI)

**Picture**: A saved sequence of QuickDraw drawing commands (and, optionally, picture comments) that you can play back later with a single procedure call; also, the image resulting from these commands. (GSTR, PI)

**PILOT**: Acronym for Programmed Inquiry, Learning, Or Teaching. A high-level programming language designed for teachers and used to create computer-aided instruction (CAI) lessons that include color graphics, sound effects, lesson text, and answer checking. SuperPILOT is an enhanced version of the original Apple II PILOT programming language. (CTR, ETR)

**Pinning**: The process of assigning positive overflows to the largest positive representable value and negative overflows to the largest negative representable value. (GSTR)

**Pipelining**: A feature of a processor that enables it to begin fetching the next instruction before it has finished executing the current instruction. All else being equal, processors with this feature run faster than those without it. (CTR, ETR)

**Pixel**: A contraction of picture element, the smallest dot you can draw on the screen. Also, a location in video memory that corresponds to a point on the graphics screen when the viewing window includes that location. In the Super Hi-Res display on the Apple IIGS, each pixel is represented by either 2 or 4 bits. See also pixel image. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

**Pixel image**: A graphics image picture consisting of a rectangular grid of pixels. (GSTR, PI)

**Pixel map**: A set of values that represents the positions and states of the set of pixels making up an image. Compare bit map. (GSF, GSH, GST)

**Plain-styled**: Said of a font or character that is not bold, italicized, underlined, or otherwise styled apart from ordinary text. (GSTR, PI)

**Plane**: The front-to-back position of a window on the desktop. (GSTR, PI)
**plotting vector:** A code representing a single step in drawing a shape on the high-resolution graphics screen. The plotting vector specifies whether to plot a point at the current screen position, and in what direction to move (up, down, left, or right) before processing the next vector. (CTR, ETR)

**point:** (1) A unit of measurement for type; 12 points equal 1 pica, and 6 picas equal 1 inch; thus, 1 point equals 1/72 inch. (2) A relative measure (taken from the type measure) used to distinguish font size on output devices. (3) In QuickDraw II, the Y and X coordinates of a location on the coordinate plane. (GSTR, PI)

**point of call:** The point in a program from which a subroutine or function is called. (CTR, ETR)

**pointer:** (1) An item of information consisting of the memory address of some other item. For example, the 65816 stack register contains a pointer to the top of the stack. (2) The mouse pointer, an arrow-shaped cursor whose screen location is controlled by mouse movements. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

**pointing device:** Any device, such as a mouse, graphics tablet, or light pen, that can be used to specify locations on the computer screen. (GSTR, PI)

**poke:** To store information directly into a location in the computer’s memory. (CTR, ETR)

**polygon:** Any sequence of connected lines. (GSTR, PI)

**pop:** To remove the top entry from a stack, moving the stack pointer to the entry below it. Synonymous with pull. Compare push. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

**port:** (1) A socket on the back panel of the computer where the user can plug in a cable to connect a peripheral device, another computer, or a network. (2) A graphic port (GrafPort). (GST, GSTR, PI) In the Apple IIc, slots are called ports. (CTR)

**port rectangle:** A rectangle that describes the active region of a GrafPort’s pixel map—the part that QuickDraw II can draw into. The content region of a window on the desktop corresponds to the window’s port rectangle. (GSTR, PI)

**portrait mode:** A printing mode in which text prints from left to right on the paper. (GSTR)

**portRect:** The GrafPort field that defines the port’s port rectangle. (GSTR, PI)

**position-independent:** Code that is written specifically so that its execution is unaffected by its position in memory. It can be moved without needing to be relocated. Compare absolute, relocatable. (PI, P16)

**post:** To place an event in the event queue for later processing. (GSTR, PI)

**power supply:** A circuit that draws electrical power from a power outlet and converts it to the kind of power the computer can use. (CTR, ETR) The large metal box inside the Apple II GS that divides and conditions the household current, supplying the voltages required by the main logic board and some peripheral devices. (GHS) The metal case inside most Apple II and Macintosh computers that houses the power supply. The Apple IIc uses an external power supply case. (CTR, ETR)

**PR#:** An Applesoft BASIC command that directs output to a slot or a machine-language program. It activates an output routine in the ROM on a peripheral card or in equivalent RAM by changing the address of the standard output routine used by the computer. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**precedence:** The order in which operators are applied in evaluating an expression. Precedence varies from language to language, but usually resembles the precedence rules of algebra. (CTR, ETR)
**prefix**: A pathname starting with a volume name and ending with a subdirectory name. It is the part of a full pathname that precedes a partial pathname—a prefix and a partial pathname together constitute a full pathname. A prefix always starts with a slash (/) because a volume directory name always starts with a slash. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**prefix number**: A code used to represent a particular prefix. Under ProDOS 16, there are nine prefix numbers, each consisting of a number (or asterisk) followed by a slash: 0/, 1/,...,8/, and */. (PI, P16)

**prestyled**: Said of a font that has a certain style or combination of styles built into the font's design. (GSTR)

**Print Manager**: The Apple IIGS tool set that allows an application to use standard QuickDraw II routines to print text or graphics on a printer. (GSTR, PI)

**print record**: A record containing all the information needed by the Print Manager to perform a particular printing job. (GSTR, PI)

**printed-circuit board**: A hardware component of a computer or other electronic device, consisting of a flat, rectangular piece of rigid material, commonly Fiberglas, to which integrated circuits and other electronic components are connected. (CTR, ETR)

**printer information subrecord**: A data structure within the print record that contains the information needed for page composition. (GSTR)

**printing loop**: The page-by-page cycle that an application goes through when it prints a document. (GSTR, PI)

**private scrap**: A buffer (and its contents) set up by an application for cutting and pasting, analogous to but apart from the desk scrap. (GSTR, PI)

**private symbol**: A label in a segment that may be referenced by other segments in the same file, but not by segments in other files. (PI)

**procedure**: In the Pascal and Logo programming languages, a sequence of instructions that work as a unit; approximately equivalent to the term function in C or subroutine in BASIC. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**processor**: The hardware component of a computer that performs the actual computation by directly executing instructions represented in machine language and stored in main memory. See microprocessor. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**processor status register**: See status register. (PI)

**ProDOS**: A disk operating system for the Apple II family of computers. ProDOS stands for Professional Disk Operating System, and includes ProDOS 8 and ProDOS 16. Compare Disk Operating System (DOS). (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**ProDOS 16**: A disk operating system developed for 65816 native-mode operation on the Apple IIGS. It is functionally similar to ProDOS 8 but more powerful. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**ProDOS 8**: A disk operating system developed for standard Apple II computers. It runs on 6502-series microprocessors and on the Apple IIGS when the 65C816 processor is in 6502 emulation mode. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**ProDOS command**: Any one of the 28 commands recognized by ProDOS. (CTR, ETR)

**program**: (n) A set of instructions describing actions for a computer to perform in order to accomplish some task, conforming to the rules and conventions of a particular programming language. (v) To write a program. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**program bank register**: The 65C816 register whose contents form the high-order byte of all 3-byte code address operands. Also called PB register. (GSTR, PI)

**program counter**: See PC register. (GSTR, PI)
**program line:** The basic unit of an Applesoft BASIC program, consisting of one or more statements separated by colons (:). (CTR, ETR)

**program status register:** A register in the 65C816 microprocessor that contains flags reflecting the various aspects of machine state and operation results. See status register. (GSTR, PI)

**programmable read-only memory (PROM):** A type of ROM device that is programmed after fabrication, unlike ordinary ROM devices, which are programmed during fabrication. (GSH, GST)

**programming language:** A set of symbols and associated rules or conventions for writing programs. BASIC, Logo, and Pascal are programming languages. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**PROM:** See programmable read-only memory. (GSH, GST)

**prompt:** A message on the screen that a program provides when it needs a response from the user. A prompt is usually in the form of a symbol, a dialog box, or a menu of choices. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST)

**prompt character:** A text character displayed on the screen, usually just to the left of a cursor, where your next action is expected. The prompt character often identifies the program or component of the system that's prompting you. For example, Applesoft BASIC uses a square bracket prompt character (); Integer BASIC, an angle bracket (>); and the system Monitor program, an asterisk (*). (CTR, ETR, GST)

**prompt line:** A specific area on the display reserved for prompts. (CTR, ETR)

**proportionally spaced:** Said of a font whose characters vary in width, so the amount of horizontal space needed for each character is proportional to its width. Compare monospaced. (GSTR, PI)

**protocol:** A formal set of rules for the interchange of information between two programs or devices; for example, the rules for sending and receiving data on a communication line. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

**Protocol Converter:** A set of machine language routines used in the Apple II family for performing block device I/O. See Smartport. (CTR) A set of ROM-based assembly-language routines used to support external I/O devices such as the Apple Memory Expansion Card and the Apple 3.5 Drive. (GST)

**pseudo-type:** A type that provides some additional information about a parameter of a toolbox routine. (GSTR)

**pull:** To remove the top entry from a stack, this instruction moves the stack pointer to the entry below it. Synonymous with pop. Compare push. (GSH, P16)

**pull-down menu:** A set of choices for actions that appears near the top of the display screen in a desktop application, usually overlaying the present contents of the screen without disrupting them. Dragging through the menu and releasing the mouse button while a command is highlighted chooses that command. (GSTR, PI)

**purge:** To temporarily deallocate a memory block. The Memory Manager purges a block by setting its master pointer to NIL (0). All handles to the pointer are still valid, so the block can be reconstructed quickly. Compare dispose. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**purge level:** A memory block attribute, indicating that the Memory Manager may purge the block if it needs additional memory space. Purgeable blocks have different purge levels, or priorities for purging; these levels are set by Memory Manager calls. (PI)

**purge level:** A memory block attribute, indicating that the Memory Manager may purge the block if it needs additional memory space. Purgeable blocks have different purge levels, or priorities for purging; these levels are set by Memory Manager calls. (GSTR, P16)

**purgeable:** A memory block attribute, indicating that the Memory Manager may purge the block if it needs additional memory space. Purgeable blocks have different purge levels, or priorities for purging; these levels are set by Memory Manager calls. (P16)
**push:** To add an item to the top of a stack, moving the stack pointer to the next entry above the top. Compare push. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, PI16)

**Quagmire register:** On the Apple IIIGS, the name given to the 8 bits comprising the speed-control bit and the shadowing bits. From the Monitor program, the user can read from or write to the Quagmire register to access those bits, even though they are actually in separate registers. (GSF)

**queue:** A list in which entries are added (pushed) at one end and removed (pulled) at the other end, causing entries to be removed in first-in, first-out (FIFO) order. Compare stack (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI, PI16)

**QuickDraw II:** The Apple IIIGS tool set that controls the graphics environment and draws simple objects and text. Other tools call QuickDraw II to draw such things as windows. (GSTR, PI)

**QuickDraw II Auxiliary:** An Apple IIIGS tool set that provides extensions to the capabilities of QuickDraw II. (PI)

**QuickDraw II Auxiliary:** The Apple IIIGS tool set that provides extensions to the capabilities of QuickDraw II. (GSTR)

**QuickDraw II Auxiliary icon record:** A data structure that defines the appearance of an icon. (GSTR)

**quit:** To terminate execution in an orderly manner. Apple IIIGS applications quit by making a ProDOS 16 QUIT call or the equivalent. (GSTR, PI)

**quit return stack:** A stack maintained in memory by ProDOS 16. It contains a list of programs that have terminated but are scheduled to return when the presently executing program is finished. (PI, PI16)

**QWERTY keyboard:** The standard layout of keys on a typewriter keyboard; its name is formed from the first six letters on the top row of letter keys. Compare Dvorak keyboard. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**radio button:** A common type of control in dialog boxes. Radio buttons are small circles organized into families; clicking any button on turns off all the others in the family, like the buttons on a car radio. See also check box. (GSTR, PI)

**radio frequency (RF):** Broadcast frequency over which radio and television operate. Generally defined as the radio spectrum between 3 MHz and 3000 MHz. (GSF)

**radio-frequency modulator:** A device used to raise video signals to a frequency that may be received and displayed by a television, as a substitute for a standard video monitor when one is not available. (CTR, ETR, GSH)

**RAM:** See random-access memory. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

**RAM disk:** A feature of some operating systems which makes it possible to use programmable memory (RAM) as a disk volume. Large applications designed for machines with limited amounts of RAM must load program segments from disk as needed; on machines with RAM disk, the entire application is first loaded into RAM, where it runs as if still resident on disk, but much faster. (GSF, GSH, GST)

**random-access device:** See block device. (GSH, PI16)

**random-access memory (RAM):** Memory in which information can be referred to in an arbitrary or random order. As an analogy, a book is a random-access storage device in that it can be opened and read at any point. RAM usually means the part of memory available for programs from a disk; the programs and other data are lost when the computer is turned off. A computer with 512K RAM has 512 kilobytes available to the user. (Technically, the read-only memory (ROM) is also random access, and what's called RAM should correctly be termed read-write memory.) Compare read-only memory, read-write memory. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GSTR, GSTR, PI)
**random-access text file**: A text file that is partitioned into an unlimited number of uniform-length compartments called records. When you open a random-access text file for the first time, you must specify its record length. No record is placed in the file until written to. Each record can be individually read from or written to—hence, random-access. (CTR, ETR)

**range mode**: In the List Manager, a selection mode that allows the user to select a range of members in a list. (GSTR)

**raster**: The pattern of parallel lines making up the image on a video display screen. The image is produced by controlling the brightness of successive points on the individual lines of the raster. (CTR, ETR)

**RDKEY**: The firmware routine that a program uses to read a single keystroke from the keyboard. (GSF)

**read**: To transfer information into the computer's memory from outside the computer (such as a disk drive or modem) or into the computer's processor from a source external to the processor (such as the keyboard or main memory). (CTR, ETR)

**read-only memory (ROM)**: Memory whose contents can be read, but not changed; used for storing firmware. Information is placed into read-only memory once, during manufacture; it then remains there permanently, even when the computer's power is turned off. Compare random-access memory, read-write memory, write-only memory. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GST, GSTR, PI) Nonvolatile, permanent memory. ROM ICs may be written once, usually in the development of the computer. Data are retained in the memory even after power is disconnected. Special ROM ICs allow you to change the data in them under specific conditions such as ultraviolet light (EPROMs [erasable programmable read-only memory]), or high voltages (EEPROMs [electrically erasable programmable read-only memory]). Normally, however, ROM ICs are written once. (GSH)

**read-write memory**: Memory whose contents can be both read and changed (or written to); commonly called RAM. The information contained in read-write memory is erased when the computer's power is turned off and is permanently lost unless it has been saved on a disk or other storage device. Compare random-access memory, read-only memory. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

**real font**: A font that exists on disk or was added by an application and marked as real. Compare unreal font. (GSTR)

**real number**: In computer usage, a number that may include a fractional part; represented inside the computer in floating-point form. Because a real number is of infinite precision, this representation is usually approximate. Compare integer. (CTR, ETR)

**real-time clock (RTC)**: A custom IC that, once set, retains the current time of day, day, month, and year. Chapter 7 provides details of the RTC and other built-in I/O devices. (GSB)

**receive data register**: A read-only register in the serial port ACIA (at $C008 for port 1 and $C0A8 for port 2) that stores the most recent character successfully received. (CTR)

**recharge routine**: The function that supplies data to the output device when background printing is taking place. (GSB)

**record**: A component of an load segment. All OMF file segments are composed of records, some of which are program code and some of which contain cross-reference or relocation information. (P16)

**rectangle**: One of the fundamental shapes drawn by QuickDraw II. Rectangles are completely defined by two points—their upper-left and lower-right corners on the coordinate plane. The upper-left corner of any rectangle is its origin. (GSTR, PI)

**reentrant**: Said of a routine that is able to accept a call while one or more previous calls to it are pending, without invalidating the previous calls. Under certain conditions, the Apple IIGS Scheduler manages execution of routines that are not reentrant. (GST, GSTR, PI, P16)
**reference:**  (n) The name of a segment or entry point to a segment; same as symbolic reference. (v) To refer to a symbolic reference or to use one in an expression or as an address. (P16)

**region:**  An arbitrary area or set of areas on the QuickDraw coordinate plane. The outline of a region must be one or more closed loops. (GSTR, PI)

**register:**  A location in a processor or other chip where an item of information is held and modified under program control. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**relational operator:**  An operator, such as >, that operates on numeric values to produce a logical result. Compare arithmetic operator, logical operator. (CTR, ETR)

**Reload segment:**  A load-file segment that is always loaded from the file at program startup, regardless of whether the rest of the program is loaded from file or restarted from memory. Reload segments contain initialization information, without which certain types of programs would not be restartable. (P16) A segment that is always reloaded from disk when a program is executed, even if the program is in a dormant state in computer memory. Some programs require RELOAD segments in order to be restartable. (P16)

**RELOC record:**  A part of a relocation dictionary that contains relocation information for local (within-segment) references. (P16)

**relocatable:**  Characteristic of a load segment or other OMF program code that includes no references to specific address, and so can be loaded at any memory address. A relocatable segment consists of a code image followed by a relocation dictionary. Compare absolute. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**relocate:**  To modify a file or segment at load time so that it will execute correctly at its current memory location. Relocation consists of patching the proper values onto address operands. The loader relocates load segments when it loads them into memory. See also relocatable. (P16)

**relocation:**  The act of modifying a program in memory so that its address operands correctly reflect its location and the locations of other segments in memory. Relocation is performed by the System Loader when a relocatable segment is first loaded into memory. (GSTR, PI)

**relocation dictionary:**  A portion of a load segment that contains relocation information necessary to modify the memory image portion of the segment. See relocate. (PI, P16)

**repeat delay:**  The time interval before the first auto-key event is generated. (GSTR)

**repeat speed:**  The time interval between auto-key events, except for the first auto-key event. See also repeat delay. (GSTR)

**Request-To-Send:**  An RS-232-C signal from a DTE to a DCE that serves to prepare the DCE for data transmission. (CTR)

**reserved memory:**  Memory not managed by the Memory Manager; that is, memory that is marked as busy at startup time. (GSTR)

**reserved word:**  A word or sequence of characters reserved by a programming language for some special use and therefore unavailable as a variable name in a program. (CTR, ETR)

**resident:**  See memory-resident, disk-resident. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**resource:**  A type of organization for certain components of Macintosh files. Resources provide a convenient means for manipulating the fixed (unchanging) parts of a program file. (P16)

**resource editor:**  A program for editing resources, especially data in a program, without having to recompile the program. (GST, PI)

**Resource Manager:**  The Macintosh toolbox component that retrieves, manipulates, and disposes of resources. (GST, PI)
**restart:** To reactivate a dormant program in the computer's memory. The System Loader can restart dormant programs if all their static segments are still in memory. If any critical part of a dormant program has been purged by the Memory Manager, the program must be reloaded from disk instead of restarted. (PI, P16)

**restartable:** Said of a program that reinitializes its variables and makes no assumptions about machine state each time it gains control. Only restartable programs can be resurrected from a dormant state in memory. (PI, P16)

**result:** An item of information returned to a calling program from a function. Compare value. (P16)

**return address:** The point in a program to which control returns on completion of a subroutine or function. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**RF:** See radio frequency. (GSH)

**RF modulator:** See radio-frequency modulator. (CTR, ETR, GSH)

**RGB:** Abbreviation for red, green, and blue. A method of displaying color video by transmitting these three colors as three separate signals. There are two ways of using RGB with computers: TTL RGB, which allows the color signals to take on only a few discrete values; and analog RGB, which allows the color signals to take on any values between their upper and lower limits, for a wide range of colors. The Apple IIIGS uses analog RGB; connect only RGB monitors using analog RGB to the RGB video connector at the rear of the computer. Compare composite video. (GSF, GSH, GST, PI)

**RGB monitor:** A type of color monitor that receives separate signals for each color (red, green, and blue). Compare composite video. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**right scroll bar:** The control the user selects to scroll vertically through the data in the window. (GSTR)

**ROM:** See read-only memory. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

**ROM disk:** A feature of some operating systems making it possible to use read-only memory (ROM) as a disk volume. Often used for making applications permanently resident. See also RAM disk. (GSF, GSH, GST)

**ROM font:** The font contained in system ROM. (GSTR)

**rounded result:** The nearest representable value to the actual value, with ties going to the value with the larger magnitude. (GSTR)

**rounded-corner rectangle:** One of the fundamental shapes drawn by QuickDraw II. The rounded corners of this type of rectangle are defined by an oval height and oval width. (GSTR)

**routine:** A part of a program that accomplishes some task subordinate to the overall task of the program. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

**row:** A horizontal arrangement of character cells or graphics pixels on the screen. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**RS-232:** A common standard for serial data communication interfaces. (GSF, GST)

**RS-232 cable:** Any cable that is wired in accordance with the RS-232 standard, which is the common serial data communication interface standard. (CTR, ETR)

**RS-232-C:** A common standard for serial data-communication interfaces. (GSH)

**RS-422:** A standard for serial data-communication interfaces, different from the RS-232 standard in its electrical characteristics and in its use of differential pairs for data signals. The serial ports on the Apple IIGS use RS-422 devices modified so as to be compatible with RS-232-C devices. (GSF, GSH, GST)

**RTC:** See read-only memory. (GSH)

**RTI:** Return from Interrupt, a 65816 assembly-language instruction. (PI)

**RTL (Return from Subroutine Long):** Return from subroutine Long; a 65816 assembly-language instruction. It is used in conjunction with a JSL instruction. (GSTR, PI, P16)
**RTS (Return from Subroutine):** Return from Subroutine; a 6502 and 65C816 assembly-language instruction. It is used in conjunction with a JSR instruction. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**RTS:** See Request-To-Send. (CTR)

**run:** (1) To execute a program. When a program runs, the computer performs the instructions. (2) To load a program into main memory from a peripheral storage medium, such as a disk, and execute it. (CTR, ETR)

**run-time library file:** A load file containing program segments—each of which can be used in any number of programs—that the System Loader loads dynamically when they are needed. (P16)

**S register:** See stack register. (GSTR, PI)

**SANE (Standard Apple Numeric Environment):** The set of methods that provides the basis for floating-point calculations in Apple computers. SANE meets all requirements for extended-precision, floating-point arithmetic as prescribed by IEEE Standard 754 and ensures that all floating-point operations are performed consistently and return the most accurate results possible. See Standard Apple Numeric Environment. (GST, GSTR, PI)

**SANE Tool Set:** The Apple IIGS tool set that performs high-precision floating-point calculations, following SANE standards. (GSTR, PI)

**sapling file:** An organizational form of a ProDOS 16 standard file. A sapling file consists of a single index block and up to 256 data blocks. (P16)

**save:** To store information by transferring the information from main memory to a disk. Work not saved disappears when you turn off the computer or when the power is interrupted. (CTR, ETR)

**scaled font:** A font that is created by the Font Manager by calculation from a real font of a different size. (GSTR, PI)

**scaling:** The process of taking all characters of a real font and making them bigger or smaller to generate a requested font. (GSTR)

**scan line:** A single horizontal line of pixels on the screen. It corresponds to a single sweep of the electron gun in the video display tube. (GSTR, PI)

**scan line control byte (SCB):** A byte in memory that controls certain properties, such as available colors and number of pixels, for a scan line on the Apple IIGS. Each scan line has its own SCB. (GSTR, PI)

**SCB:** See scan line control byte. (GSTR)

**SCC:** Abbreviation for Serial Communications Controller, a type of communications IC used in the Apple IIGS. The SCC can run synchronous data transmission protocol and thus transmit data at faster rates than the ACIA. See Serial Communications Controller. (GSF, GSH, GST)

**Scheduler:** The Apple IIGS tool set that manages requests to execute interrupted software that is not reentrant. If, for example, an interrupt handler needs to make system software calls, it must do so through the Scheduler because ProDOS 16 is not reentrant. Applications normally need not use the Scheduler because ProDOS 16 is not in an interrupted state when it processes applications' system calls. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**schematic diagram:** A diagram using special figures to represent ICs, logic functions, and interconnecting wires, to describe a circuit. Schematic diagrams for the Apple IIGS main logic board are located in the Addendum. (GSH)

**scrap count:** A count that indicates how many times the desk scrap has changed. (GSTR)

**Scrap Manager:** The Apple IIGS tool set that supports the desk scrap, which allows data to be copied from one application to another (or from one place to another within an application). (GSTR, PI)

**screen:** See display screen. (CTR, ETR)
**screen holes:** Locations in the text display buffer (text Page 1) used for temporary storage either by I/O routines running in peripheral-card ROM or by firmware routines addressed as if they were in card ROM. Text Page 1 occupies memory from $0400$ to $07FF$; the screen holes are locations in that area that are neither displayed nor modified by the display firmware. (GSF, GSH, GST)

**scroll:** To move all the text on the screen upward or downward, and, in some cases, sideways. See viewport, window. (CTR, ETR, GSTR, PI)

**scroll bar:** A rectangular bar that may be along the right or bottom of a window. Clicking or dragging in the scroll bar causes the view of the document to change. (GSTR, PI)

**SECAM:** A French acronym meaning “sequential color with memory.” A video standard originating in France and used in the USSR and other countries. (GSH)

**sector:** A division of a track on a disk. When a disk is formatted, its surface is divided into tracks and sectors. (GSH, P16)

**segment:** A component of an OMF file, consisting of a header and a body. In object files, each segment incorporates one or more subroutines. In load files, each segment incorporates one or more object segments. (PI, P16)

**segment kind:** A numerical designation used to classify a segment in object module format. It is the value of the KIND field in the segment's header. (PI, P16)

**selection range:** The series of characters where the next editing action will occur. (GSTR)

**self-booting:** Said of a program that executes automatically when the computer is turned on or reset. (PI)

**semiconductor:** A class of materials whose resistivity lies between that of conductors and insulators, for example, germanium and silicon. Solid-state electronic devices is based on the use of semiconductors. (GSH)

**sequence:** A series of commands that tells the computer what notes to play and when. (PI)

**sequential-access device:** See character device. (P16)

**serial:** A single-wire connection for the purpose of transferring bits of data one at a time, usually between a computer and a peripheral device. Compare parallel. (GSH)

**Serial Communications Controller (SCC):** A type of communications IC used in the Apple IIGS. The SCC can run synchronous data transmission protocol and thus transmit data at faster rates than the ACIA. Compare ACIA. (GSH, GST)

**serial interface:** A standard method, such as RS-232, for transmitting data serially (as a sequence of bits). (GSTR, PI) An interface in which information is transmitted sequentially, a bit at a time, over a single wire or channel. Compare parallel interface. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**serial port:** The connector for a peripheral device that uses a serial interface. (GST, GSTR, PI) The two connectors located at the back of the Apple IIGS main logic board that provide a means for communicating with peripherals (such as printers and local area networks) using a serial interface. (GSH)

**setup time:** The amount of time a signal must be valid in advance of some event. Compare hold time. (CTR, ETR)

**shadowing:** The process whereby any changes made to one part of the Apple IIGS memory are automatically and simultaneously copied into another part. When shadowing is on, information written to bank $00$ or $01$ is automatically copied into equivalent locations in bank $E0$ or $E1$. Likewise, any changes to bank $E0$ or $E1$ are immediately reflected in bank $00$ or $01$. (GSF, GSH, P16)
Shaston: The Apple IIGS system font. (GSTR, PI)

shell: A program that provides an operating environment for other programs, and that is not removed from memory when those programs are running. For example, the APW Shell provides a command processor interface between the user and the other components of APW, and remains in memory when APW utility programs are running. A shell is one type of controlling program. (PI)

shell application: A type of program that is launched from a shell and runs under its control. Shell applications are ProDOS 16 file type $B5. In APW, compilers and certain Shell commands are shell applications that are launched from the APW Shell. (PI, P16)

shell call: A request from a program to the APW Shell to perform a specific function. (PI)

shut down: To remove from memory or otherwise make unavailable, as a tool set that is no longer needed or an application that has quit. (GSTR, PI)

silicon: A solid, crystalline chemical element (symbol Si) from which integrated circuits are made. Silicon is a semiconductor; that is, it conducts electricity better than insulators, but not as well as metallic conductors. Silicon should not be confused with silica—that is, silicon dioxide, such as quartz, opal, or sand—or with silicone, any of a group of organic compounds containing silicon. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST)

simple variable: A variable that is not an element of an array. (CTR, ETR)

Simplified Keyboard: See Dvorak keyboard. (GST)

single mode: In the List Manager, a selection mode that allows the user to select only one member of a list at once; that is, when the user drags the mouse, the selection moves from one member to another. (GSTR)

640 mode: An Apple IIGS video display mode, 640 pixels horizontally by 200 pixels vertically. (PI)

6502: The microprocessor used in the Apple II, in the Apple II Plus, and in early models of the Apple IIe. The 6502 is an NMOS device with an 8-bit data bus and a 16-bit address bus. (PI)

65C816: The version of the 65816 microprocessor used in the Apple IIGS. The 65C816 is a CMOS device. (PI)

65816: A general term for the type of microprocessor used in the Apple IIGS. The 65816 is related to, but more advanced than, the 6502 microprocessor. It has a 16-bit data bus and a 24-bit address bus. (PI)

65816 assembly language: A low-level programming language written for the 65816 family of microprocessors. (PI)

size box: A small region in the lower right corner of a window that the user can drag to change the size of the window. (GSTR)

slop rectangle: The rectangle that allows the user some margin for error when moving the mouse. (GSTR)

slot: A narrow socket inside the computer where the user can install peripheral cards. Also called an expansion slot. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

SmartPort: A set of firmware routines supporting multiple block devices connected to the Apple IIGS disk port. See also extended SmartPort call and standard SmartPort call. (GSF, GSH, PI)

Smartport: A set of machine language routines used in the Apple II family for performing block device I/O. See Protocol Converter. (CTR)

smoothing: A LaserWriter printing option that asks the system to smooth out any bit-mapped fonts with jagged edges. (GSTR)
**soft switch:** Also called a software switch; a means of changing some feature of the computer from within a program. For example, DIP switch settings on ImageWriter printers can be overridden with soft switches. Specifically, a soft switch is a location in memory that produces some special effect whenever its contents are read or written. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, P16)

**software:** A collective term for programs, the instructions that tell the computer what to do. Software is usually stored on disks. Compare firmware, hardware. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI) A group of instructions to the microprocessor, instructing it to perform certain functions, such as performing computations, displaying data on a monitor, reading data from and writing data to a disk. The group of instructions is known collectively as a program. Compare application program. (GSTR)

**sound GLU (general logic unit):** The interface chip between the system hardware and the sound hardware. (GSTR)

**Sound Tool Set:** The Apple IIIGS tool set that provides low-level access to the sound hardware. (GSTR)

**source:** See source location. (PI)

**source code:** See source program. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**source file:** An ASCII file consisting of instructions written in a particular language, such as Pascal or assembly language. An assembler or compiler converts source files into object files. (GSF, PI, P16)

**source location:** The location (memory buffer or portion of the QuickDraw II coordinate plane) from which data such as text or graphics are copied. Compare destination location. See also source rectangle, destination rectangle. (GSTR, PI)

**source program:** The form of a program given to a language translator, such as a compiler or assembler, for conversion into another form; sometimes called source code. Compare object program. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**source rectangle:** The rectangle (on the QuickDraw II coordinate plane) where text or graphics are drawn when transferred from somewhere else. Compare destination rectangle. (GSTR, PI)

**space character:** A text character whose printed representation is a blank space, typed from the keyboard by pressing the Space bar. (CTR, ETR)

**SPACE parity:** A bit value of 0 appended to a binary number for transmission. The receiving device can look for this value on each character as a means of error checking. (CTR)

**sparse file:** A variation of the organizational forms of ProDOS 16 standard files. A sparse file may be either a sapling file or a tree file; what makes it sparse is the fact that its logical size (defined by its EOF) is greater than its actual size on disk. This occurs when one or more data blocks contain nothing but zeros. Those data blocks are considered to be part of the file, but they are not actually allocated on disk until nonzero data is written to them. (P16)

**special memory:** On an Apple IIIGS, all of banks $00 and $01 and all display memory in banks $E0 and $E1. It is the memory directly accessed by standard Apple II programs running on the Apple IIIGS. (GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

**spool printing:** A two-step printing method used to print graphics on the ImageWriter. In the first step, it writes out (spools) a representation of your document's printed image to a disk file or to memory. In the second step, this information is converted into a bit image and printed. Compare draft printing. (GSTR, PI)

**SRQ list:** A special tool mechanism that can be used to poll the Apple Desktop Bus for data from specific devices. (GSTR)
SRQ list completion routine: Used in conjunction with the ADB Tool Set routine AsyncADBReceive, this completion routine obtains ADB data from a buffer. The only major difference between this routine and the AsyncADBReceive completion routine is that the SRQ list routine has an extra return address on the stack when it is called. Compare AsyncADBReceive completion routine. (GSTR)

SSC: Abbreviation for Super Serial Card, a peripheral card that enables an Apple II to communicate with serial devices. (GSTR)

stack: A list in which entries are added (pushed) and removed (pulled) at one end only (the top of the stack), causing entries to be removed in last-in, first-out (LIFO) order. The stack usually refers to the particular stack pointed to by the 65C816’s stack register. Compare queue. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, , GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

stack pointer: See stack register. (GSTR, PI)

stack register: A hardware register in the 65C816 processor that contains the address of the top of the processor’s stack. (GSF, GSH)

stack register: A register in the 65816 processor that indicates the next available memory address in the stack. Also called S register. (GSTR, PI, P16)

stage byte: Determines the actions taken by an alert. See also alert stage. (GSTR)

standard Apple II: Any computer in the Apple II family except the Apple IIGS. That includes the Apple II, the Apple II Plus, the Apple Ile, and the Apple IIc. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

Standard Apple Numerics Environment (SANE): The set of methods that provides the basis for floating-point calculations in Apple computers. SANE meets all requirements for extended-precision, floating-point arithmetic as prescribed by IEEE Standard 754 and ensures that all floating-point operations are performed consistently and return the most accurate results possible. (GST, GSTR, PI)

standard file: One of the two principal categories of ProDOS 16 files. Standard files contain whatever data they were created to hold; they have no predefined internal format. Compare directory file. (P16)

Standard File Operations Tool Set: The Apple IIGS tool set that creates a standard user interface for opening and closing files. (GSTR)

Standard File Operations Tool Set: The Apple IIGS tool set that creates a standard user interface for opening and closing files. (PI)

standard instruction: An instruction automatically present when no superseding instruction has been received. (CTR, ETR)

standard linker (APW): One aspect of the linker supplied with APW. The operation of the standard linker is automatic. Compare advanced linker. (PI)

standard SmartPort call: A SmartPort call that allows data transfer to or from anywhere in standard Apple II memory, or the lowest 64K of Apple IIGS memory. Compare extended SmartPort call. (GSF)

standard window controls: The window controls that allow the user to scroll through the data in the window, change the window’s shape, or close the window. They also provide information about the document currently displayed in the window. (GSTR, PI)

START: The name of the program in the SYSTEM/subdirectory of the startup disk that is launched automatically when the system is booted. START is typically a finder or program launcher. (PI)

start bit: A transition from a MARK signal to a SPACE signal for one bit-time, indicating that next string of bits represents a character. (CTR)

start bit: One or two bits that indicate the beginning of a character in a string of serially transmitted characters. (GST)

start up: To get the system or application program running. (PI)
**start up:** To get the system running. It involves loading system software from disk, and then loading and running an application. Also called boot. (P16)

**start up:** To get the system running. Starting up involves loading system software from disk, and then loading and running an application. Also called boot. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR)

**starting value:** The value assigned to the index variable on the first pass through a loop. (CTR, ETR)

**startup disk:** A disk with all the necessary program files—such as the Finder and System files contained in the System folder in Macintosh—to set the computer into operation. In Apple II, sometimes called a boot disk. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**statement:** A unit of a program in a high-level language that specifies an action for the computer to perform. A statement typically corresponds to several instructions of machine language. (CTR, ETR)

**static segment:** A program segment that must be loaded when the program is started and cannot be removed from memory until execution terminates. Compare dynamic segment. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**static text:** Text on the screen that cannot be altered by the user. (GSTR, PI)

**status register:** A location in the ACIA (at $0C099 for port 1 and $0C0A9 for port 2) that stores the state of two RS-232-C signals and the state of the transmit and receive data registers, as well as the outcome of the most recent character transfer. (CTR) A register in the 65816 microprocessor that contains flags reflecting the various aspects of machine state and operation results. (PI)

**step value:** The amount by which the index variable changes on each pass through a loop. (CTR, ETR)

**stop bit:** A bit indicating the end of a character in a string of serially transmitted characters. (GST) A MARK signal following a data string (or the optional parity bit), indicating the end of a character. (CTR)

**storage type:** An attribute of a ProDOS 16 file that describes the file's organizational form (such as directory file, seedling file, or sapling file). (PI6)

**string:** A sequence of characters. See C string, Pascal string. (CTR, ETR, GSTR, PI)

**string bounds rectangle:** The smallest rectangle that would enclose all the foreground and background pixels of a string if the string were to be drawn. (GSTR)

**strobe:** A signal whose change is used to trigger some action. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**structure region:** An entire window: its content region plus its frame region. (GSTR, PI)

**style dialog box:** A dialog box that allows the user to specify formatting information, page size, and printer options. (GSTR, PI)

**style subrecord:** A data structure within the print record that contains information gathered from the user via the style and job dialog boxes. (GSTR)

**styled variation:** An italicized, bold, underlined, or otherwise altered version of a plain-styled character or font. (GSTR, PI)

**subdirectory:** A file that contains information about other files. In a hierarchical file system, files are accessed through the subdirectories that reference them. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**subroutine:** A part of a program that can be executed on request from another point in the program and that returns control, on completion, to the point of the request. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

**Super Hi-Res:** Either of two high-resolution Apple IIGS display modes. 320 mode consists of an array of pixels 320 wide by 200 high, with 16 available colors; 640 mode is an array 640 wide by 200 high, with 16 available colors (with restrictions). (GSF, GSH, GST, PI)
**swap pair:** A pair of oscillators that form a functional unit (called a generator) when the digital oscillator chip (DOC) is in swap mode. (GSTR)

**switch event:** An event that indicates the application is being returned to after being switched out of by a switcher-type application. (GSTR, PI)

**switcher:** A controlling program that rapidly transfers execution among several applications. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**symbolic reference:** A name or label, such as the name of a subroutine, that is used to refer to a location in a program. When a program is linked, all symbolic references are resolved; when the program is loaded, actual memory addresses are patched into the program to replace the symbolic references. (This process is called relocation.) (PI)

**sync signal:** A signal which exists for the purpose of synchronizing two devices. Frequently generated by a video generator and used by a video monitor to synchronize the video display to the separate video information. In the Apple IIGS, the sync signal is mixed with the video information resulting in the composite video signal. (GSH)

**synchronous:** A mode of data transmission in which a constant time interval exists between transmission of successive bits, characters, or events. Compare asynchronous. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**synchronous transmission:** A transmission process that uses a clocking signal to ensure an integral number of unit (time) intervals between any two characters. Compare asynchronous transmission. (CTR, ETR)

**syntax:** (1) The rules governing the structure of statements or instructions in a programming language. (2) A representation of a command that specifies all the possible forms the command can take. (CTR, ETR)

**synthesizer:** (1) A hardware device capable of creating sound digitally and converting it into an analog waveform that you can hear. (2) By analogy, any sound-making entity, such as the Free-Form Synthesizer in the Sound Tool Set. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI)

**system:** A coordinated collection of interrelated and interacting parts organized to perform some function or achieve some purpose—for example, a computer system comprising a processor, keyboard, monitor, disk drive, and software. (CTR, ETR, GST, P16)

**system call:** See operating system call. (P16)

**system clock:** See clock (1). (GSTR)

**system configuration:** See configuration. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**system disk:** A disk that contains the operating system and other system software needed to run applications. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

**system event mask:** A set of flags that control which event types get posted into the event queue by the Event Manager. (GSTR, PI)

**system failure:** The unintentional termination of program execution due to a severe software error. (GSTR, PI)

**System Failure Manager:** A firmware program that processes fatal errors by displaying a message on the screen and halting execution. (P16) A part of the Miscellaneous Tool Set that processes fatal errors by displaying a message on the screen and halting execution. (GSTR, PI)

**system file:** See system program. (P16)

**system file level:** A number between $00 and $FF associated with each open ProDOS 16 file. Every time a file is opened, the current value of the system file level is assigned to it. If the system file level is changed (by a SET_LEVEL call), all subsequently opened files will have the new level assigned to them. By manipulating the system file level, a controlling program can easily close or flush files opened by its subprograms. (PI, P16)
system folder: The SYSTEM/subdirectory on a ProDOS 16 system disk. (GSTR, PI)

system font: The font that QuickDraw II uses as the default current font when a new GrafPort is opened. (GSTR)

system library prefix: ProDOS 16 prefix number 2/. It specifies the directory containing libraries used by system software. (PI)

System Loader: The program that manages the loading and relocation of load segments (programs) into the Apple II GS memory. The System Loader works closely with ProDOS 16 and the Memory Manager. (GSTR, PI, P16)

system menu bar: The menu bar that always appears at the top of the screen in desktop applications. It contains all of the commonly used functions such as File, Edit, and so on. Compare window menu bar. (GSTR, PI)

system prefix (ProDOS 8): The one prefix maintained by ProDOS 8. (PI)

system program: (1) A software component of a computer system that supports application programs by managing system resources such as memory and I/O devices. Also called system software. (2) Under ProDOS 8, a stand-alone and potentially self-booting application. A ProDOS 8 system program is of file type $FF; if it is self-booting, its filename has the extension .SYSTEM. (CTR, ETR, GST, P16)

system software: The component of a computer system that supports application programs by managing system resources such as memory and I/O devices. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

system window: A window in which a desk accessory is displayed. (GSTR, PI)

TAB: An ASCII character that commands a device such as a printer to start printing at a preset location (called a tab stop). There are two such characters: horizontal tab (hex 09) and vertical tab (hex 0B). TAB works like the tabs on a typewriter. (CTR, ETR)

task code: A numeric value assigned to the result of each event handled by TaskMaster. Compare event code. (GSTR, PI)

task mask: A parameter passed to TaskMaster, specifying which types of events Taskmaster is to respond to. (PI)

TaskMaster: A Window Manager routine that handles many typical events for an application. Applications may call TaskMaster instead of GetNextEvent. (GSTR, PI)

television set: A display device capable of receiving broadcast video signals (such as commercial television broadcasts) by means of an antenna. Can be used in combination with a radio-frequency modulator as a display device for the Apple II family of computers. Compare video monitor. (CTR, ETR)

template: A data structure or set of parameters that defines the characteristics of a desktop feature, such as a window control. The NewWindow parameter list is a template that defines the appearance of a window to be opened by the NewWindow call. (GSTR, PI)

terminal mode: The mode of operation in which the Apple II GS acts like an intelligent terminal. (GSF)

text: (1) Information presented in the form of readable characters. (2) The display of characters on a display screen. Compare graphics. (CTR, ETR, GST)

text block: A number of ASCII characters in a buffer, with the number specified separately. (GSTR)

text buffer: A 1-bit-per-pixel pixel image reserved for the private use of the QuickDraw II text-drawing call. (GSTR, PI)

text file: A file consisting of the ASCII representation of characters. (PI)

text file format (TFF): A file that consists of ASCII representations of characters. Compare object module format. (GSTR)

text mode: One of 16 possible interactions between pixels in text being drawn to the screen and pixels on the screen that fall under characters being drawn. Compare pen, drawing mode. (GSTR, PI)
Text Tool Set: The Apple IIIGS tool set that provides an interface between Apple II character device drivers and applications running in native mode. (GSTR, PI)

text window: A window on the desktop within which text is displayed and scrolled. (GST) An area on the video display screen within which text is displayed and scrolled.

(CTR, ETR) That portion of the screen that is reserved for text. After starting the computer, the firmware uses the entire display for text. However, if you wish, you can restrict the text video activity to any rectangular portion of the display. (GSH)

text-based interface: An interface between computer and user in which all screen drawing (or other output) consists of characters. The form of each character is stored in ROM and can be involved with a single byte of data. Compare graphic interface. (PI)

TFF: See text file format. (GSTR)

320 mode: An Apple IIIGS video display mode, 320 pixels horizontally by 200 pixels vertically. (PI)

tick count: The (approximate) number of 60th second intervals since system startup. (GSTR, PI)

title bar: The horizontal bar at the top of a window that shows the name of the window’s contents. The user can move the window by dragging the title bar. (GSTR, PI)

tool: See tool set. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

tool call: A call to a function within a tool set. (PI)

Tool Locator: The Apple IIIGS tool set that dispatches tool calls. The Tool Locator knows and retrieves the appropriate routine when your application makes a tool call. (GSTR, PI)

tool pointer table (TPT): A table, maintained by the Tool Locator, that contains pointers to all active tool sets. (GSTR, PI)

tool set: A group of related routines (usually in ROM) that perform necessary functions or provide programming convenience. They are available to applications and system software. The Memory Manager, the System Loader, and QuickDraw II are Apple IIIGS tool sets. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, PI, P16)

tool table: A list of all needed tool sets and their minimum required versions. An application constructs this table in order to load its RAM-based tool sets with the LoadTools call. (GSTR, PI)

toolbox: A collection of built-in routines on the Apple IIIGS that programs can call to perform many commonly needed functions. Functions within the toolbox are grouped into tool sets. See Apple IIIGS Toolbox. (GSF, GSH, GSTR, P16)

TPT: See tool pointer table. (GSTR)

traces: Electrical paths that connect the components on a circuit board. (CTR, ETR)

track: (1) One of a series of concentric circles magnetically recorded on the surface of a disk when it is formatted. Each track is further divided into sectors. Each sector can hold several K of data. (2) A grouping of items in a musical sequence. The Note Sequencer supports multiple tracks to facilitate writing multi-instrument music. (GSF, GSH, PI, P16)

transfer mode: A specification of which Boolean operation QuickDraw II should perform when drawing. See, for example, XOR. (GSTR, PI)

transistor-transistor logic (TTL): (1) A family of integrated circuits having bipolar circuit logic; TTL ICs are used in computers and related devices. (2) A standard for interconnecting such circuits, which defines the voltages used to represent logical zeros and ones. (CTR, ETR, GST)

transmit data register: A location in the ACIA (at location $C098$ for port 1 and $C0A8$ for port 2) that holds the current character to be transmitted. (CTR)
**tree file:** An organizational form of a ProDOS 16 standard file. A tree file consists of a single master index block, up to 127 index blocks, and up to 32,512 data blocks. (P16)

**troubleshoot:** To locate and correct the cause of a problem or malfunction, especially in hardware. Compare debug. (CTR, ETR)

**TRUE:** Not zero. The result of a Boolean operation. The opposite of FALSE. (GSTR, PI)

**TTL:** See transistor-transistor logic. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**TTL RGB:** A type of video monitor that can accept only a limited number of digital values and display only a correspondingly limited number of colors. Stands for transistor-transistor logic, red, green, blue. Compare analog RGB. (GSH, GST, PI)

**turnkey disk:** See startup disk. (CTR, ETR)

**type-ahead buffer:** A buffer that accepts and holds characters that are typed faster than the computer can process them. (GST)

**typeID:** A subfield of the user ID. The User ID Manager assigns a typeID value based on the type of program (application, tool set, and so on) requesting the memory. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**unary operator:** An operator that applies to a single operand. For example, the minus sign (-) in a negative number such as -6 is a unary arithmetic operator. Compare binary operator. (CTR, ETR)

**unbuffered:** A style of input and output that does not use a buffer for I/O; reading and writing is done one character at a time. (GSH)

**unclaimed interrupt:** This occurs when the hardware Interrupt Request Line is active, indicating that an interrupt-producing device needs attention, but none of the installed interrupt handlers claims responsibility for the interrupt. (GSTR)

**unconditional branch:** A branch that does not depend on the truth of any condition. Compare conditional branch. (CTR, ETR)

**underline:** (1) A style of text. (2) A method used to separate groups of items in a menu. An underlined item does not use any more space, on the screen or in memory, than the item does without the underline. Compare dividing line. (GSTR)

**unhighlight:** To restore to normal display. Selected controls, menu items, or other objects may be highlighted (usually displayed in inverse colors) while in use and unhighlighted when not in use. (GSTR, PI)

**unload:** To remove a load segment from memory. To unload a segment, the System Loader does not actually "unload" anything; it calls the Memory Manager to either purge or dispose of the memory block in which the code segment resides. The loader then modifies the Memory Segment Table to reflect the fact that the segment is no longer in memory. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**unlock:** To permit the Memory Manager to move or purge a memory block if needed. Opposite of lock. (GSTR, PI)

**unmovable:** See fixed. (GSTR, P16, PI)

**unpack:** To restore to normal format from a packed format. (GSTR, PI)

**unpurgeable:** Having a purge level of zero. The Memory Manager is not permitted to purge memory blocks whose purge level is zero. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**unreal font:** A font that was scaled by the Font Manager from a real font of a different size or added by an application and marked as unreal. Compare real font. (GSTR)

**update:** A type of window event, signifying that all or part of the window needs to be redrawn. (PI)

**update event:** An event posted by the Window Manager when all or part of a window needs to be redrawn. (GSTR, PI)

**update region:** A description of the part of a window that needs to be redrawn. The Window Manager keeps track of each open window's update region. (PI)
**user:** A person operating or controlling a computer system. (GST)

**User ID:** An identification number that specifies the owner of every memory block allocated by the Memory Manager. User ID's are assigned by the User ID Manager. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**User ID Manager:** A part of the Miscellaneous Tool Set that is responsible for assigning user ID's to every block of memory allocated by the Memory Manager. (GSTR, PI, P16)

**user interface:** The rules and conventions by which a computer system communicates with the person operating it. (GST)

**utilities:** Programs that let you rename, copy, format, delete, and otherwise manipulate files and volumes. (GST)

**value:** An item of information passed from a calling routine to a function. Compare result. (P16) An item of information that can be stored in a variable, such as a number or a string. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**variable:** (1) A location in the computer's memory where a value can be stored. (2) The symbol used in a program to represent such a location. Compare constant. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**VBL:** Short for vertical blanking, an interrupt signal generated by the video timing circuit each time it finishes a vertical scan, 60 times a second. (GSH, GST)

**vector:** (1) The starting address of a program segment, when used as a common point for transferring control from other programs. (2) A memory location used to hold a vector, or the address of such a location. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI) A location containing a value that, when added to a base address value, provides the address that is the entry point of a specific kind of routine. (GSF)

**version:** A number indicating the release edition of a particular piece of software. Version numbers for most system software (such as ProDOS 16 and the System Loader) are available through function calls. (P16)

**vertical blanking:** The interval between successive screen drawings on a video display. It is the time between drawing the last pixel of the last scan line of one frame and the first pixel of the first scan line of the next frame. (PI)

**VGC:** See Video Graphics Controller. (GSH)

**video:** (1) A medium for transmitting information in the form of images to be displayed on the screen of a cathode-ray tube. (2) Information organized or transmitted in video form. (CTR, ETR, GST) An electrical signal containing information that may be obtained visually when displayed on a video monitor. Information organized or transmitted in video form. See also NTSC, PAL, SECAM. (GSH)

**Video Graphics Controller (VGC):** The custom IC on the Apple IIGS main logic board responsible for generating all video used in the Apple IIGS. (GSH)

**video monitor:** A display device that can receive video signals by direct connection only, and that cannot receive broadcast signals such as commercial television. Can be connected directly to the computer as a display device. Compare television set. (CTR, ETR, GSH, GST, P16)

**view rectangle:** The rectangle within which text in an edit record is visible; that is, the portion of the text in the destination rectangle that the user can see is determined by the view rectangle. (GSTR)

**viewport:** All or part of the display screen used by an application program to display a portion of the information (such as a document, picture, or worksheet) on which a program is working. Compare window. (CTR, ETR)

**visible region:** The part of a window that's actually visible on the screen. The visible region is a GrafPort field manipulated by the Window Manager. (GSTR, PI)

**voice:** Any one of 16 pairs of oscillators in the Ensoniq sound chip on the Apple IIGS. (GSTR, PI)
**volume**: An object that stores data; the source or destination of information. A volume has a name and a volume directory with the same name; information on a volume is stored in files. Volumes typically reside in devices; a device such as a floppy disk drive may contain one of any number of volumes (disks). (CTR, ETR, P16)

**volume bit map**: A portion of every ProDOS 16-formatted disk that keeps track of free disk space. (P16)

**volume control block (VCB)**: A data structure set up in memory by ProDOS 16 to keep track of all volumes/devices connected to the computer. (P16)

**volume directory**: A ProDOS 16 directory file that is the principal directory of a volume. It has the same name as the volume. The pathname of every file on the volume starts with the volume directory name. (P16)

**volume name**: The name by which a particular volume is identified. It is the same as the filename of the volume directory file. (PI, P16)

**warm start**: The process of transferring control back to the operating system in response to a failure in an application program. Compare cold start. (CTR, ETR, GST)

**wavetable**: A group of data bytes in memory used as data by the DOC to generate sound. The wavetable is built by using the DOC to digitize an analog input signal and placing the resulting data bytes in sound RAM memory. (GSH)

**wedge**: A filled arc, one of the fundamental shapes drawn by QuickDraw II. (GSTR, PI)

**window**: A rectangular area that displays information on a desktop. You view a document through a window. You can open or close a window, move it around on the desktop, and sometimes change its size, scroll through it, and edit its contents. The area inside the window's frame corresponds to the port rectangle of the window's GrafPort. (GST, GSTR, PI) The portion of a collection of information (such as a document, picture, or worksheet) that is visible in a viewport on the display screen. Compare viewport. (CTR, ETR)

**window definition procedure**: A procedure used to define the appearance and behavior of a custom window. (GSTR)

**window frame**: The outline of the entire window plus certain standard window controls. (GSTR, PI)

**Window Manager**: The Apple IIGS Tool Set that updates and maintains windows. (GSTR, PI)

**window menu bar**: A menu bar that appears at the top of the active window, below the system menu bar. It can contain document titles, applications, and functions. Compare system menu bar. (GSTR, PI)

**window record**: The internal representation of a window, where the Window Manager stores all the information it needs for its operations on that window. (GSTR, PI)

**word**: A group of bits that is treated as a unit. For the Apple IIGS, a word is 16 bits (2 bytes) long. Compare long, long word. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**wraparound**: The automatic continuation of text from the end of one line to the beginning of the next; wraparound means that you don't have to press the Return key at the end of each line as you type. (GST)

**write**: To transfer information from the computer to a destination external to the computer (such as a disk drive, printer, or modem) or from the computer's processor to a destination external to the processor (such as main memory). (CTR, ETR)
**write protect:** To protect the information on a 5.25-inch disk by covering the write-enable notch with a write-protect tab, preventing the disk drive from writing any new information onto the disk. Compare copy protect. (CTR, ETR)

**write-enable notch:** The square cutout on one edge of a 5.25-inch disk's jacket. If there is no write-enable notch, or if it is covered with a write-protect tab, the disk drive can read information from the disk, but cannot write on it. (CTR, ETR)

**write-only memory:** A form of computer memory into which information can be stored but never, ever retrieved. For more information, refer to The Life of Homberg T. Farnsfarlfe, by Bruce Tognazzini. (GSH, GST)

**write-protect tab:** (1) A small adhesive sticker used to write protect a 5.25-inch disk by covering the write-enable notch. (2) The small plastic tab in the corner of a 3.5-inch disk jacket. You lock (write protect) the disk by sliding the tab toward the edge of the disk; you unlock the disk by sliding the tab back so that it covers the rectangular hole. (CTR, ETR)

**x flag:** One of three flag bits in the 65C816 processor that programs use to control the processor's operating modes. In native mode, the setting of the x flag determines whether the index registers are 8 bits wide or 16 bits wide. See also e flag, m flag. (GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI)

**X register:** One of the two index registers in the 6502 OR 65C816 microprocessor. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

**XOFF:** A special character (ASCII value $11$) used for controlling the transfer of data between a microcomputer and a serial peripheral device. When one piece of equipment receives an XOFF character from the other, it stops transmitting characters until it receives an XON. See handshaking, XON. (GSF, GSH, GST)

**XON:** A special character (ASCII value $13$) used for controlling the transfer of data between a microcomputer and a serial peripheral device. See handshaking, XOFF. (GSF, GSH, GST)

**XOR:** Exclusive-OR. A Boolean operation in which the result is TRUE if, and only if, the two items being compared are unequal in value. (GSTR, PI)

**Y register:** One of the two index registers in the 6502 OR 65C816 microprocessor. (CTR, ETR, GST, GSTR, PI)

**z flag:** A bit in the 65816 processor's Processor Status register that is set to 1 if the last operation resulted in 0 (zero). (GSTR)

**zero page:** The first page (256 bytes) of memory in a standard Apple II computer (or in the Apple IIgs computer when running a standard Apple II program). Because the high-order byte of any address in this part of memory is zero, only a single byte is needed to specify a zero-page address. Compare direct page. (CTR, ETR, GSF, GSH, GST, GSTR, PI, P16)

**zoom box:** A small box with a smaller box enclosed in it found on the right side of the title bar of some windows. Clicking the zoom box expands the window to its maximum size; clicking it again returns the window to its original size. (GSTR, PI)

**zoom region:** The window region that corresponds to the zoom box. (GSTR, PI)

** aç:** A modifier key on some Apple II keyboards. On the Apple IIgs keyboard, the equivalent key is called simply the Apple key; it is marked with both an Apple icon and a spinner, the icon used on some Macintosh keyboards. (GSF)
#6 command CTR-155
#7 command CTR-169
#8 command CTR-169
#include statement GSTR-2-6
$ (dollar) CTR-225
$C0 IIGS #27
$C1 IIGS #27
$C300 space GS/OS #2
$C800 I/O space Miscellaneous #3
$C800 space Miscellaneous #11
* (asterisk) as prompt character ETR-62
* (asterisk) CTR-59,CTR-104
. (period) as Monitor command ETR-102
. (period) CTR-206
: (colon) as Monitor command ETR-105
: (colon) CTR-216,CTR-224
> (greater than sign) as prompt character ETR-62
? (question mark) as prompt character ETR-62
? (question mark) CTR-59,CTR-169,CTR-179
@ (at sign) CTR-113
\ (backslash) CTR-59,CTR-63
l (right bracket) as prompt character ETR-62
^ (caret) ETR-122, ETR-125, CTR-225
_ (underscore) CTR-179
Apple (Open Apple) ETR-11-14, ETR-228
Apple (Solid Apple) ETR-11-14, ETR-228
/RAM ProDOS #8, #16, #18, #21
/RAM5 GSTR-40, GST-79
/SYSTEM.DISK GS/OS #1
/SYSTEM.TOOLS GS/OS #1
01 time Ile #2
00 time Ile #2
1 MHz speed GST-15, GST-76
128K Apple II GST-xiv
display modes GST-86
memory bank emulation GST-15
128K Apple Ile, graphic display
features GST-20-21
128K Run-Time Systems Pascal #10
16M signal ETR-163
16-bit mode. See native mode
3.5 ROM Ile Ile #7
3.5" Disks Pascal #16
3.5 drive differences UniDisk 3.5 #5
320 graphics mode GST-22, GST-24,
IIGS #4, PI-7, PI-80, PI-98, PI-99, PI-147 PI-100
3DOG Ile #3
40-column display Ile #2, CTR-
5, CTR-50, CTR-86, CTR-91, CTR-
92, CTR-94, CTR-259, CTR-358,
GST-20, GST-46
addressing CTR-263
map CTR-107
memory CTR-261
switching to CTR-5
40-column text ETR-21, ETR-22
40-column text display GSH-58,
GSH-59, GSH-67, GSH-75-76
display pages ETR-27-28
generation ETR-178-179
memory map ETR-33, ETR-177
with TV set ETR-16
40K disks UniDisk 3.5 #4
40COL IIGS #29
48K memory CTR-36-39
switches CTR-39
48K Run-Time System
Pascal #10, #15
5.25-inch floppy disks GST-40, P16-
46
50740A chip (Keyboard
Microprocessor) GST-12
558 timer Ile #6
640 graphics mode GST-22-24, GST-
61, IIGS #4, PI-7, PI-80, PI-98,
PI-99, PI-102
64K Apple II GST-xiv
64K Run-Time Systems Pascal #10
6502 GSH-2, GSH-3, GSH-198
6502 emulation mode, See 65816
microprocessor, 6502 emulation
mode
6502 microprocessor ETR-xx, ETR-6,
GSH-8, P16-4, P16-9, P16-75,
P1-x, PI-xi, PI-3, PI-9, PI-294-
295
differences from 65C02 ETR-6,
ETR-209-210
instruction set GST-4-5, GST-8
memory addressing GST-16-17
65C02 microprocessor GSH-198,
CTR-13, CTR-75, CTR-237-
241, CTR-297-307, ETR-xx, ETR-
6, ETR-209-219
addressing modes CTR-26, CTR-
302, CTR-304
block diagram CTR-237-238, CTR-
299
characteristics CTR-300-301
data sheets CTR-298-307, ETR-210-
219
differences from 6502 ETR-6, ETR-
209-210
enhancements CTR-301
instruction mnemonics CTR-302
instruction set CTR-306
interrupt handling CTR-333
operational codes CTR-306-307
pin configuration CTR-299
pin function CTR-300
programming model CTR-303
ratings CTR-300
registrs CTR-18-19
signal description CTR-305
 specifications CTR-239, ETR-161-
163
stack ETR-78
timing CTR-239-241,CTR-302
versus 6502 CTR-297-298
timing ETR-162-163
65816 assembly language GSF-54 See
assembly language, GST-8
65816 microprocessor PI-xiv, PI-3-5,
PI-10, PI-65, PI-291, GS/OS-8,9,
GSH-2, GSH-3, GSH-7-167,
GSH-168, GSH-196-227
6502 emulation mode GST-5, GST-
13-14, GST-75-76, GST-89, GST-
14, GSH-198, GSH-201
Apple II program compatibility
GST-96-97
direct page location GST-83,
GST-84
disassembler support GST-50
I/O shadowing GST-29
mini-assembler support GST-50
mixing program environments
GST-88-89
operating system overview GST-
95
program enhancement GST-97
program environments
summarized GST-89
registers illustrated GST-14
stack location GST-83, GST-84
switching to GST-49
Text Tool Set GST-70
Apple Desktop Bus microcontroller
GSF-186
APW Assembler GST-101–102
clock speed GST-14–15, GST-74–80
compared with 68000 GST-61
disassembler GST-50
execution speeds GSF-9
extended memory addressing GST-49
features GST-13
flags e, m, x GST-83
indexed instructions GSF-17
macro assembler GST-8
memory map GST-15
mini-assembler GST-50
modes GSF-9
native mode GST-13–14, GSH-198,
GSH-201 See also native mode
registors GST-14
specifications GST-3
68000 microprocessor GST-5, GST-61
6805 AppleMouse microprocessor
card GSF-213
74LS245 Ile #2
8-bit Apple II
clock speed of programs written for
GST-15
operating system GST-95
program environments GST-89–90,
GST-113
program modification GST-97
See also Apple II family
See standard Apple
8-bit mode. See emulation mode
8-bit programs
bank register values GST-83
direct page location GST-84
stack location GST-84
80-column card P16-34
Miscellaneous #1, #10,
ProDOS #11, #15
80-column display CTR-38,CTR-
64,CTR-68,CTR-86,CTR-
91,CTR-92,CTR-100,CTR-
106,CTR-358
640 graphics mode GST-23
addressing CTR-263
card position GST-28
Control Panel GST-46
dot patterns CTR-269
internal I/O routine GST-51–52
map CTR-108
on RGB monitor GST-20
switching to CTR-5
80-column firmware ETR-xxi, ETR-
49–50, Ile #8, GS/OS #2
activating ETR-50
control characters with ETR-272–
275
80-column screen dump
Miscellaneous #1
80-column text ETR-21, ETR-22
80-Column Text Card ETR-86, ETR-
134, ETR-150, ETR-267–275
80-column text display GSH-37,
GSH-58, GSH-59, GSH-67,
GSH-71, GSH-75–76, PI-6, PI-
260
slot for PI-8
80-column text
differences in Apple II family ETR-
228
display pages ETR-27–28
generation ETR-178–179
map ETR-34
signals ETR-197–198
with Applesoft ETR-xxi
with Pascal ETR-xxi
with TV set ETR-16
80/40 switch CTR-3, CTR-5
800K disks UniDisk 3.5 #4
80COL Ile #2, Ile #8
80COL soft switch ETR-29
80Col switch CTR-101,CTR-102,CTR-
243
80STORE Ile #3
80STORE soft switch ETR-29, ETR-32,
ETR-87, ETR-89, ETR-90, ETR-
198, CTR-39,CTR-45,CTR-
101,CTR-102,CTR-106,CTR-241
9-pin connectors ETR-8, ETR-40

A
A register CTR-18,CTR-43,CTR-
84,CTR-113–115,CTR-192,CTR-
213, ETR-146, GSF-18, GSF-35,
GST-2–5, GST-2–7
changing GSF-60
system interrupt handler GSF-181
See accumulator
A/D Converter register GSH-103
A1 ETR-92
A2 ETR-92
A4 ETR-92
ABORT GSF-179, GSF-3–20, GSTR-
3–28
ABORT command GSF-188
abortMgr GSF-2–67
ABORTMSGV GSF-265
"About HodgePodge" dialog box PI-
39
"About..." dialog boxes PI-31, PI-
142–144
absClamps GSTR-14–66
AbsOff GSTR-3–13
absolute addresses, disassembler
GST-50
absolute clamp GSTR-7–27, GSTR-14–
21, GSTR-14–37, GSTR-14–38
absolute code P16–188, PI-24, PI-
196, PI-226–227, PI-295
vs. relocatable code PI-24, PI-227
absolute device GSTR-3–13, GSTR-3–
15, GSTR-3–16, GSTR-3–23,
GSTR-14–5, GSTR-14–37, GSTR-
14–38
Absolute flag GSTR-3–4
absolute segment. See segment(s)
AbsOn GSTR-3–13
access attribute P16–14, P16–21, P16–
backup bit P16–134, P16–277
write-enable bit P16–137
access byte PI-215
accessing files PI-162–165
accessing. See device(s), disks
accumulator CTR-18,CTR-64,CTR-
69,CTR-84,CTR-90,115, ETR-
138, ETR-148, GSF-35, GSH-200,
P16–77–78, P16–104, P16–209,
P16–213, PI-4, PI-66, PI-294
65816 registers GSTR-14
input routines GSTR-53
Monitor firmware routines GST-54
size of GST-89
accumulator mode GSF-62
ACIA (Asynchronous
Communications Interface
Adapter) GST-39, ETR-286
block diagram CTR-276
command register CTR-280
control register CTR-278–279
register locations for port-1 CTR-
159
register locations for port-2 CTR-
173
status register CTR-130,CTR-281
transmit/receive register CTR-282
See asynchronous communications
interface adapter
acibuf Ile #6
acoustic coupler CTR-177
action code
MessageCenter GSTR-24–15
new desk accessory GSTR-5–7
action procedure GSTR-4–83–84
dialog scroll bar GSTR-6–15
action routine (NDA) PI-265
activate event GSTR-7–4, GSTR-7–5,
GSTR–7–14, GSTR-10–11, GSTR-
10–16, GSTR-10–20, GSTR-25–24,
activating PI–73
activator GSH–139
active control GSTR–4–7
active controls PI–128, PI–129
active windows PI–114–116
activeFlag GSTR–7–9, GSTR–7–10, GSTR–7–51
activeMask GSTR–7–11, GSTR–7–50
ADB Change Address When Activated handler GSTR–3–4
ADB microcontroller. See Apple DeskTop Bus microcontroller
ADBBootInit GSTR–3–10
adbDataInt GSTR–14–24, GSTR–14–66
adbDisable GSTR–14–26, GSTR–14–67
adbEnable GSTR–14–26, GSTR–14–67
adbRBHold GSTR–14–68
ADBReset GSTR–3–5, GSTR–3–12
ADBSHUTDOWN GSTR–3–5, GSTR–3–11
adbSRQHnd GSTR–14–68
ADBSstartup GSTR–3–5, GSTR–3–10
ADBStatus GSTR–3–12
ADBVersion GSTR–3–11
ADC (analog-to-digital converter) GSTR–25
AddFamily GSTR–8–19, GSTR–8–23, GSTR–8–25, GSTR–8–26
addition GSF–32-bit
addMessage GSTR–24–15, GSTR–24–26
AddPt GSTR–16–68
address: opcode operands GSTR–50
address bus ETR–161–162
and expansion cards GSTR–28
Apple II slots GSTR–30
on expansion slot GSTR–29
specifications GSTR–3
address field, mini-assembler GSTR–50
Address Pointer registers GSH–98, GSH–100, GSH–101
address transformation ETR–177
address wrapping GSH–27
addresses
alert source GSTR–326
alerts GSTR–72–261
Caution Alert PI–135
Note Alert PI–135
programming techniques PI–141
sound in PI–135
Stop Alert PI–135
AlertWindow IIGS #48
ALIGN segment header field P16–186, P16–299. See also headers; segment(s)
alignment factor P16–299. See also segment(s)
ALLOC INTERRUPT PI–272
allocation of memory GSTR–12–1, GSTR–12–35
allocation of private memory GSTR–12–10–11, GSTR–12–14
description of P16–175–176
alreadyInitialized GSTR–16–64, GSTR–16–278, GSTR–B–3
ALTC CHAR soft switch ETR–29, CTR–102, CTR–243, CTR–360
Mouse #6
on original Ile ETR–20
alternate-display-mode desk accessory GSTR–5–24
ALTZIP soft switch ETR–84, ETR–89–90, CTR–28, CTR–242
AMPERV GSF–259
AN3 Ile #3
analog I/O impedance IIGS #9
analog inputs CTR–200, ETR–42–43, GSTR–41
(PDL0 through PDL3) GSH–157–158
analog RGB See RGB video
analog-to-digital converter (ADC) GSTR–25
animation ETR–231
Lo-Res graphics GSTR–47
annunciator memory locations GSH–267
annunciator outputs (AN0 through AN3) GSH–157
annunciators ETR–40–41, ETR–43
any-key-down (AKD) CTR–78, CTR–243, CTR–255
applesoft BASIC interpreter CTR–326
display CTR–259–261
firmware CTR–322–327
I/O link CTR–56–58
memory CTR–20
mouse port CTR–325
port CTR–323–325
RAM CTR–22, CTR–351
serial port CTR–323–324
video display CTR–101
video firmware CTR–324
See memory; direct page and stack addressing
display pages ETR–31–37, ETR–174–179
I/O locations ETR–138–139
indirect ETR–77
RAM ETR–139, ETR–169–171
relative ETR–121, ETR–126, ETR–137
ROM ETR–168–169
addressing modes CTR–26, CTR–226, GSH–197
24-bit CTR–13–14
disassembler and mini-assembler GSTR–50
extended memory addressing GSTR–49
65CO2 CTR–302, CTR–304
AdjWind PI–57, PI–59, PI–155
ADV.DISK.UTIL GS/OS #1
ADVANCE GSF–240
advanced linker (APW) PI–223, PI–235, PI–236
Alert GSTR–6–19–22, GSTR–6–31–34, IIGS #48
alarm box GSTR–6–6, PI–135
default button PI–135
template for creating PI–140
alarm mechanism GSTR–6–1
alarm sound GSTR–6–6, GSTR–6–21–22, GSTR–6–47
alarm stage GSTR–6–20–21, GSTR–6–33, GSTR–6–49, GSTR–6–76
alert window GSTR–6–7, GSTR–25–6
color table GSTR–25–17
alertDrawn GSTR–6–89
Apple II setup, page 1
differences between original and enhanced ETR-xix-xxiii
game I/O connectors GSF-41
interrupt support ETR-132, ETR-148-149
interrupt support GST-54
memory, main and auxiliary GST-16-17
microprocessor ETR-6
Mini-Assembler ETR-123-125
mini-assembler GST-50
Monitor I/O firmware GST-51
Monitor Search command ETR-110
MouseText ETR-12, ETR-20
program compatibility GST-96-97
slot 3 ETR-144
slots GST-74
tabbing in Applesoft ETR-271-272
using Caps Lock ETR-49
Apple IIGS See also ProDOS 8;
ProDOS 16; programming techniques
Apple IIGS Debugger PI-224, PI-248-253
Apple IIGS Disk II
firmware GSF-5
I/O port characteristics GSF-111
SmartPort interactions GSF-158
support GSF-109-112
Apple IIGS firmware SmartPort #6
Apple IIGS font definition GSTR-16-42-43
Apple IIGS Programmer's Workshop
P16-xx, P16-xviii, P16-70, P16-89-90. See also programming,
advanced linker PI-223, PI-235, PI-236, PI-238
Assembler GST-8, GST-101-102, PI-xviii, PI-222
C compiler GST-102, PI-xviii, PI-222
Debugger GST-105
Editor GST-104, PI-222
language considerations PI-225
Linker GST-104, PI-222
parameter-passing PI-225
program descriptions PI-221-224
program development GST-103-105
reference manual GST-110
Shell GST-103-104, PI-199, PI-221-222, PI-259, PI-261
standard linker PI-223, PI-235, PI-238
utilities GST-105, PI-223
Compact PI-223
Crunch PI-223
DumpOBJ PI-223
Equal PI-224
Files PI-224
Init PI-224
MacGen PI-224
MakeLib PI-224, PI-238
Search PI-224
file Type utility PI-16-89
Linker PI-16-70, PI-16-89
Shell PI-16-82, PI-16-89, PI-16-208
Apple IIGS ProgrammerUs Workshop. See APW
Apple IIGS Toolbox P16-xix, P16-6, P16-9, P17-xviii, PI-17-22, PI-42,
PI-62-106, PI-108-144, PI-146-183. See also tool sets or specific
routine/tool set
calls (typographic convention for)
PI-xvii, PI-36
compared to Macintosh PI-284-289
constants PI-38
data structures PI-38
errors PI-65, PI-66, PI-67
macros PI-65
memory requirements PI-5
keyboard support GST-42, GST-43
Apple IIGS Workshop C GSTR-2-6
Apple IIGS
40-column display GSF-71
80-column display GSF-71
Alternate Display Mode GST-47,
GSTR-68
Apple II family compatibility GST-4-5
architecture GST-74-80
boot/scan sequence GSF-17
built-in I/O PI-8-9
clock speeds PI-4
clock-calendar PI-9
compatibility with standard Apple II
PI-9-10, PI-291-292
Control Panel GST-46-47, PI-9
default operating system PI-16-15
description of PI-16-4
DeskTop Bus GST-41-43
detached keyboard GSF-10
disassembler GST-50
disk port GST-39-41, PI-8
display features GST-19-24
execution modes PI-4
features GST-2-4
firmware GSF-2-6, PI-xviii
Disk II game I/O connectors GST-41, PI-2, PI-8
general PI-xiii-xxi, PI-2-27
hardware PI-xvii
I/O expansion slots GSF-11, GST-28-33
I/O ports GSF-11
interrupt support GST-54-55
interrupts GSF-16
keyboard PI-2, PI-8
large-scale ICs used GST-12
logical diagram of P16-6
Macintosh comparison GST-5-6
memory GST-15-18, GST-77-78,
P16-9, P16-32-40. See also
memory, PI-2, PI-4, PI-5-6
memory addresses GSF-21
memory space GSF-9
microprocessor GSF-8-9
microprocessor PI-2, PI-3-5
mini-assembler GST-50
Monitor I/O firmware GST-51-54
Monitor program GST-47, GST-49
Monitor. See system Monitor
operating systems GST-82
program environments
summarized GST-113
program operation levels GSF-4
programming (general) PI-xvii
programming levels in P16-5-7
real-time clock GST-26
registers PI-4
resident desk accessories GST-46
serial I/O ports GST-33, GST-37-39,
PI-2, PI-8, PI-9
slots PI-2, PI-6, PI-8-9
sound PI-2, PI-8, PI-174
sound capabilities GST-24-25
sound system GST-10
startup GSF-112
Super Hi-Res display GSF-9-10
system disks P16-52-55. See also
system disks
technical manuals GSF-216-221, GST-106-111
Toolbox GSF-2, GSF-218, GSF-310
Toolbox compared with Macintosh
GST-59-65
video PI-2, PI-6-7
See also ProDOS 8, ProDOS 16;
manuals or specific topic
Apple IIc xxi, PI-7, PI-8, PI-1-13, PI-290
Apple IIE xxi, PI-7-9, PI-13, PI-174,
PI-290
Apple Integer BASIC CTR-308,CTR-330,CTR-348,CTR-356,CTR-388
Apple keys ETR-11-14
differences in Apple II family ETR-228
Apple Language Card CTR-351
BASIC GSF-48, GSF-51, GSF-74, GSF-75, GSF-82, GSF-83, GSF-86, GSF-87, GSF-90, GSF-112
BASIC Miscellaneous #9
BASIC command CTR-228
BASIC device driver GSTR-23-3
BASIC interpreter (BASIC.SYSTEM) P16-25, P16-34
BASIC Monitor command ETR-115
AppleSoft See Applesoft BASIC command GSF-43
compiler for GSTR-103
Integer See Integer BASIC interface GSF-93
mouse programs GSF-206-208
mouse routines GSF-203
BASIC.SYSTEM
 ProDOS #2, #6, #9, #17
BASICIN GSF-70-75
BASICIN subroutine ETR-58, ETR-220
BASICIN subroutine, address in I/O link ETR-53
BASICINPUT GSF-209
BASICOUT GSF-70, GSF-73, GSF-76-78, GSF-80
BASICOUT subroutine ETR-65, ETR-220
BASICOUT subroutine, address in I/O link ETR-53
BASICOUTPUT GSF-209
basicType GSTR-23-46
batch mode PI-13
Battery Ram GSF-299, GSF-306, GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-9, GSTR-14-10, GSTR-14-11, GSTR-14-13, GSTR-14-16
Battery Ram routines PI-181
Battery RAM
parameter reference numbers GSTR-14-12
baud rate GSF-88, GSF-152, GSF-35, GSF-46
baud rate for SSC ETR-279
baud rate serial port 1 CTR-163
baud rate serial port 2 CTR-177-178
BD command GSF-96, GSF-97, GSF-183
BEL character ETR-53
bell CTR-114
BELL GSF-253
bell character CTR-115
Bell routine CTR-84
BELL subroutine ETR-221
BELL1 GSF-239, GSTR-14-53
Bell1 routine CTR-84
BELL1 subroutine ETR-39, ETR-221
BELL1.2 GSF-239
BELL2 GSF-240
BELLVECTOR GSF-270
bellVector GSTR-14-68
bellVolume GSTR-14-65
best-fit font algorithm GSTR-8-6, GSTR-8-16-17, GSTR-8-44
Better Color option GSTR-15-8
Better Text option GSTR-15-8
bgColor GSTR-16-110, GSTR-16-213
binary file (ProDOS) P16-12, P16-224, P16-283
binary files GSTR-8, GSTR-95
BINTENTRY GSF-209
bit code (ADB) GSTR-127
bit definition ETR-236
bit images PI-286
bit map, volume. See volume bit map bit mapping of graphics ETR-23-26
bit plane GSTR-16-31
bit planes PI-98
bit-mapped memory GSTR-95
bits CTR-384-386, GSF-244-245
black GSTR-16-274
black and white drawing, QuickDraw II PI-103
blanking intervals CTR-257
blink interval GSTR-10-26
blinking caret GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-26
blinking menu item GSTR-13-76
block GSTR-12-1
See also memory block
block device formatting ProDOS #5
block device I/O firmware, entry points CTR-23
See also device(s)
block I/O device support GSTR-40
block fixed GSTR-12-7
locked movable GSTR-12-7
locking GSTR-12-31
purging GSTR-12-8, GSTR-12-39, GSTR-12-40
unlocking GSTR-12-32, GSTR-12-33
block-storage device (/RAM5) GSTR-40, GSTR-79
block-type devices CTR-120
BlockMove GSTR-12-21
blocks. See call blocks; file blocks; file control block; memory blocks; parameter blocks; volume control blocks
blue GSTR-16-274
blueMask GSTR-16-274
boldMask GSTR-16-276
BOOLEAN GSTR-xxx
boot initialization. See system startup
boot prefix P16-65, P16-67, P16-167, PI-209
boot-failure screen GSF-17
boot/scan sequence GSF-17
booting ETR-267-268, GSTR-40, GSTR-95
breakthrough errors. See errors
BOOTTRACKS.DATA Pascal #12
Border Color register GSF-77, GSF-159
border colors GSF-57, GSF-77-78, GSF-3, GST-46
boxflensel procedure IIGS #34
bottom scroll bar GSTR-25-6, PI-110
bottomMost GSTR-25-139
boundary rectangle GSTR-16-13-17, GSTR-16-232, PI-80-84, PI-103
boundRect GSTR-4-33-34, GSTR-4-88
boundsRect GSTR-16-13, I1GS #34, PI-80
boxNor GSTR-4-18, GSTR-4-87
boxReserved GSTR-4-18, GSTR-4-87
boxSel GSTR-4-18, GSTR-4-87
boxTitle GSTR-4-18, GSTR-4-87
BREAK GSF-233
Break (BRK) GSF-36, GSF-183
break character, I/O command GSTR-36
break instruction GSTR-55
break instructions ETR-155
BREAK signal CTR-163
breakpoints, (debugging) PI-250-251, GST-105
BREAKVECTOR GSF-270, I1GS #1, GST-14-68
BringToFront GSTR-25-36
BRK ($00) instructions CTR-212, CTR-221, CTR-334, GSF-179
BRK ($00) instructions handling CTR-337-338
BRK handler ETR-155, I1GS #1
BRK instruction ETR-155
BRK vector ETR-148
BRKV GSF-259
brkVar GSTR-14-66
broadcast signals (ADB) GSF-131-132
brown320 GSTR-16-274
BS GSF-241
carriage return (CR) CTR-63,CTR-114,CTR-164,CTR-179
character image GSTR-16-26, PI-93
character image width GSTR-16-44
character origin GSTR-16-26-27, GSTR-16-45, PI-93
character output switch (CSW) CTR-57,CTR-64,CTR-71,CTR-84,CTR-101,CTR-113,CTR-115, GSTR-52
character position GSTR-10-7
character rectangle GSTR-16-44
character sets CTR-358-360, GSH-74-76
alternate CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-88,CTR-92,CTR-360
ASCII CTR-3,CTR-70,CTR-78,CTR-80-81,CTR-381-382,CTR-391-395, GSH-59, GSH-74
display CTR-89, GSH-262
MouseText CTR-91
primary CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-88,CTR-359
screen CTR-6
text CTR-88-89, ETR-19-20
character sets, text, differences among Apple II models TEC-228
character width GSTR-16-26-27, GSTR-16-44, GSTR-16-45, GSTR-16-51, GSTR-16-70, GSTR-16-77, GSTR-16-267, GSTR-16-270, PI-93
character, dead GSTR-16-45
character, missing GSTR-16-48-49
characters PI-92, PI-93-94
characters at sign ($) CTR-113
characters command CTR-155,CTR-205
characters control CTR-4,CTR-5,CTR-60,CTR-65-67,CTR-70,CTR-114,CTR-165,CTR-392
characters flashing CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-88-89
inverse CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-88-89
lowercase CTR-395
normal CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-88-89
prompt CTR-59
special CTR-395
uppercase CTR-394
CharBounds GSTR-16-29, GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-58, GSTR-16-69
CHARGEN signal ETR-185
CharWidth GSTR-16-29, GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-58, GSTR-16-70
check box GSTR-4-3, GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-16
control record GSTR-4-16-18, PI-125, PI-128
checkBox GSTR-4-86
checkDiskError PI-136, PI-140, PI-308-310
CheckFrontW PI-50, PI-116
checkHandle GSTR-12-22
checkItem GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-88
CheckMItem GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-34
checkProc GSTR-4-13, GSTR-4-73, GSTR-4-85
checkToolError PI-46, PI-306-307
checkUpdate GSTR-25-37
chExtra GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-51, GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-58, GSTR-16-59, GSTR-16-60, GSTR-16-112, GSTR-16-217
choose Printer command (File menu) PI-32, PI-166, PI-289
Choose Printer dialog box GSTR-15-1, GSTR-15-4-5
ChooseCDA GSTR-5-12
ChooseFont GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-14, GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-26-27, GSTR-5-4, PI-97
Chooser PI-167, PI-289
chunky pixel GSTR-16-31
chunky pixel organization PI-99
eINTERSEG records PI-16-187, PI-16-298
circles PI-90
circuit board ETR-4-7
connectors ETR-7
clamp value GSTR-2-2, GSTR-7-27, GSTR-14-30, GSTR-14-31
clamp absolute GSTR-14-21
absolute device GSTR-14-37, GSTR-14-38
clamping Mouse #7
CLAMMOUSE GSF-209, GSF-213
ClampMouse GSTR-7-27, GSTR-14-30, Mouse #1, #3, CTR-194
Claris Miscellaneous #6
classic desk accessories GSTR-68, GSTR-89
classic desk accessory (CDA) PI-156, PI-247, PI-262, PI-300, GSTR-5-1. See also desk accessories; new desk accessory
supporting PI-1 PI-57
writing PI-265
classic desk accessory
programming examples PI-263
Cleanup call (System Loader) PI-227, PI-231, PI-245
description of PI-249-250
clear GSTR-5-30
CLEAR BACKUP BIT PI-215
19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-42, GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-13-17
CtlReset GSTR-4-44
CtlShutDown GSTR-4-9, GSTR-4-43
CtlShutdown PI-58
CtlStartUp GSTR-4-9, GSTR-4-42, PI-45
CtlStatus GSTR-4-44
CtlTextDev GSTR-23-15-16
CtlValue GSTR-4-12, GSTR-4-13, GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-17, GSTR-4-19, GSTR-4-21, GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-64, GSTR-4-79, GSTR-4-87, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-13-17
CtlVersion GSTR-4-43
CtlYVector GSTR-14-68, GSF-274
CUPDate GSF-269
current font GSTR-8-8, GSTR-16-26, GSTR-16-119, GSTR-16-224
current icon font GSTR-25-109
current, supply ETR-159-160
blinking question mark CTR-169, CTR-179
blinking underscore CTR-179
changing GSF-41, GSF-64
close control GSF-72
close keys GSF-10
mouse CTR-187
movement keys CTR-4, CTR-62
cursor keys PI-8
cursor motion in escape mode ETR-60-61
cursor position ETR-52-58, GSF-53
cursor record GSTR-16-37, GSTR-16-117, GSTR-16-222
cursor-control keys CTR-11
cursorAction GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-30
custom control GSTR-4-24, PI-130
custom debugger IGS #1
custom dispProc IGS #42
custom fonts Image Writer #1
custom IC's ETR-164-168
custom menu GSTR-13-6, PI-149, GSTR-13-72, GSTR-13-87
custom windows IGS #62, PI-111
cut GSTR-5-30
cut and paste GSF-67, GSF-71
Cut command (Edit menu) PI-32, PI-141, PI-159, PI-160, GSTR-6-42, GSTR-20-1, GSTR-20-6
cutAction GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-30
cutting and pasting PI-159-161
internally PI-160
large amounts of data PI-161
private scrap PI-161
programming techniques PI-160-161
publicly PI-160
CV (cursor vertical) CTR-64, ETR-52
cycle stealing ETR-170
D
D register GSF-11, GSF-35
changing GSF-60
See direct register
D-type connector ETR-8, GSTR-41
daisy chains, interrupt and DMA
ETR-193-195, ETR-208
daisy-chain drive connection GSTR-39
danNotFound GSTR-5-14, GSTR-5-20, GSTR-5-30, GSTR-5-32
darkGray320 GSTR-16-274
darkGreen320 GSTR-16-274
data bank GSTR-25-43
changing GSF-61
system interrupt handler GSF-181
data bank registers GSF-13, GSF-14, GSF-83
data bits, settings GSF-34, GSF-35
data blocks. See file blocks
data buffer pointer GSF-126-127
data bus ETR-161
data bus and expansion slots GSF-28
data byte encoding table GSF-164
Data Carrier Detect CTR-281
data carrier detect (DCD) GSF-84
data format GSF-88
serial port 1 CTR-163
serial port 2 CTR-177-178
data format for SSC ETR-279
data inputs CTR-23
data overruns GSF-38
data registers, 16-bit GSF-61
Data Set Ready (DSR) CTR-281
data set ready (DSR) GSF-84-85, GSF-95
data structures PI-277
Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GSF-3-29
Control Manager GSF-4-87-88
Dialog Manager GSF-6-89-90
Event Manager GSF-7-51
Font Manager GSTR-8-51
initializing (HodgePodge) PI-38-41
LineEdit Tool Set GSTR-40-41
List Manager GSTR-11-25-26
Menu Manager GSTR-13-88
Miscellaneous Tool Set GSTR-14-69
Print Manager GSTR-15-47-48
QuickDraw II GSF-16-276-278
Sound Tool Set GSTR-21-37
Standard File Operations Tool Set GSTR-22-32
toolbox-defined PI-38
Window Manager GSTR-25-142-143
Data Terminal Ready (DTI) CTR-280, GSF-84-85, GSF-95
data transfer CTR-42-43
data transmission rate GSF-34, GSF-46
date
changing GSF-64
displaying GSF-40, GSF-63
setting GSF-26
dateFormat GSTR-14-65
dates. See creation date and time;
modes and date and time
DB register. See data bank register
db hi-res Ile #3
dbclkTime GSTR-14-65
DBR register GSF-11, GSF-13, GSF-35
DC1 character ETR-54
DC2 character ETR-54
DC3 character ETR-54
DCB (device control block) GSF-123,130
DCD (data carrier detect) GSF-84
DCD handshaking GSF-34
dead character GSF-16-45
deallocation of memory GSTR-12-1, GSTR-12-23, GSTR-12-24
DEALLOC_INTERRUPT PI-272, ProDOS #12, PI-16-48, PI-16, PI-16
description of P1-16-175
Debugger (APW) GSF-8, GSF-105
debuggers P1-61, PI-68-96, CTR-212, CTR-221
debugging GSF-48, PI-246-254
with Apple IGS Debugger PI-248-253
with desk accessories PI-246-247
with Monitor program PI-247-248
debugging stub IGS #1
Dec2Int GSF-9-8
Dec2Long GSF-9-9
decSetFlag GSF-14-68
DECBUSYFLG GSF-270
decimal CTR-387-388
decimal number conversion GSF-49
decimal numbers GSF-246-248
decimal numbers, converting GSF-41,65
decimal values ETR-12
converting to hexadecimal ETR-238-239
negative ETR-239-240
decimal, negative CTR-388-389
default button GSTR-6-5, GSTR-6-11,
GSTR-6-18, GSTR-6-21, GSTR-6-24,
GSTR-6-37, GSTR-6-51, GSTR-6-80
alert box PI-135
dialog boxes PI-139
default prefix PI-208, PI-209
default properties (windows) PI-108
DefaultFilter GSTR-6-37
definition procedures PI-51, PI-109,
PI-130, PI-136, PI-149
defProc IIGS #42
defProcParm GSTR-6-90
delay Miscellaneous #12
Delete CTR-4,CTR-358
delete PI-141
delete key GSF-75
DeleteID GSTR-14-59
DeleteMenu GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-36,
GSTR-13-39
deleteMessage GSTR-24-15, GSTR-
24-26
DeleteMimeType GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-
37, PI-154
deleting files. See file(s)
deleting text GSTR-67
DellHeartBeat GSTR-7-25, GSTR-14-
52
delta GSF-199
delta flag byte GSTR-10-43
demultiplexer GSH-113-114
dependencies GSTR-C-1-5
Deref PI-190
dereference GSTR-12-5
dereferencing PI-189, PI-190, See
classic memory handles
descender GSTR-16-45
descent GSTR-16-26, GSTR-16-45,
GSTR-16-48, GSTR-16-62
descent line GSTR-16-45, PI-93
design guidelines IIGS #28
desk accessories GSH-43, GST-3,
GST-46, GST-67, GST-89, P16-
52-54, P16-170, PI-21, PI-47, PI-
75, PI-156-158, PI-182. See also
classic desk accessory; new desk
accessory
Apple menu and PI-31
debugging with PI-246-247
files P16-53-54
HodgePodge and PI-158
Macintosh PI-156, PI-289
programming techniques PI-262-
265
supporting PI-156-158
TaskMaster and PI-158
User ID and P16-71
writing PI-262-265
desk accessory GSTR-1-3, GSTR-5-1
alternate-display-mode GSTR-5-24
classic GSTR-5-1
event GSTR-7-4, GSTR-7-14
new GSTR-5-1
Desk Accessory menu GSTR-13-
GSTR-4-5
Desk Manager GSF-180, GST-59,
GST-67-68, GST-89, GSTR-1-3,
GSTR-1-5, GSTR-5-1-30, PI-21,
PI-47, PI-64, PI-71, PI-156-158,
PI-182, PI-262-265
constants GSTR-5-30
error codes GSTR-5-30
getNextEvent and GSTR-7-40
shutdowm routine GSTR-5-10
startup routine GSTR-5-9
status routine GSTR-5-11
version number routine GSTR-5-10
desk scrap GSTR-7-21, GSTR-1-3,
GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-13, GSTR-
10-20, GSTR-20-20, GST-20-
5-6, PI-21, PI-141, PI-159
data types GSTR-20-3-4
data types PI-160
on disk PI-160
desk-accessory event PI-69
DESKACCS subdir GSTR-5-3,
GSTR-5-6
deskAccEvt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50,
PI-69
deskAccEvt GSTR-7-14-68
deskAccMask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
deskBootinit GSTR-5-9
deskReset GSTR-5-11
DeskShutDown GSTR-5-4, GSTR-5-5,
GSTR-5-6, GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-
10, PI-58, PI-158
DeskStartUp GSTR-5-4, GSTR-5-5,
GSTR-5-6, GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-9,
PI-45, PI-58
DeskStatus GSTR-5-11
desktop GSTR-25-1, GSTR-25-39,
GSTR-25-91, GSTR-25-39-43
desktop applications PI-10, PI-13,
PI-124
DeskTop Bus GST-12
ADB microcontroller GST-42-43,
GST-70
detached keyboard support GST-42
firmware GST-43
interface GST-3-4, GST-41-42
interrupts GST-55
mouse support GST-42-43
ToolSet GST-70
desktop features, supporting PI-156-
161
desktop interface PI-xviii, PI-xix-xx,
PI-10-13, PI-20-21, PI-257
desktop pattern GSTR-25-43
desktop tools GST-66-68
desktop user interface GSH-233, GST-
3, GST-48, GST-58, GST-110,
GSTR-xGSTR-xvi
desktop, programming techniques
PI-10
desktop-interface tool sets PI-20-21
DeskVersion GSTR-5-10
destination rectangle GSTR-10-4,
GSTR-10-6-7, GSTR-10-36
DESTROY PI-210, PI-213, PI-26-21,
PI-115-116
destroying files PI-210
detached keyboard GST-42-43
Deutsche Industrie Normal GST-42
devent ProDOS #20
Developer Technical Support PI-279
development environment GSTR-
xGSTR-xvii, See Apple IIGS
Programmer's Workshop
devErr GSTR-23-16, GSTR-23-47,
GSTR-B-4
device addresses (ADB) GSH-137-
138
device assignment, peripheral card
ETR-145
device calls. See system calls
device control block (DCB) CTR-
130, CTR-138, GST-123, 130
device driver GSTR-3-3, GSTR-7-21
device driver entry point GSTR-23-3
device driver event GSTR-7-4
device driver, installing GSTR-7-23-
24
device driver, removing GSTR-7-25
device driver, writing GSTR-7-21-23
device drivers P16-43, P16-254, P1-
69, PI-166, PI-173
standard I/O links GST-51-52
device handlers (ADB) GSH-136-137
device identification ETR-145
device independence PI-12
Device Information Block (DIB)
ProDOS #21, SmartPort #4, #7,
CTR-131
device mapping GSF-117-119
device registers GSH-133-136
device search at system startup P16-
45-46. See also system startup
DEVICE SELECT Ile #2, #4
device select signal GST–30
DEVICE SELECT's signal ETR–133
device(s) P16–8, P16–42–46. See also interrupt(s); system calls or specific device
accessing P16–43–45, P16–84. See also programming
block P16–9, P16–14, P16–42–43, P16–84
block read and block write P16–44–45
character P16–9, P16–43
definition of P16–42
formatting disks. See disks
input P16–42–43
input/output P16–42
interrupt-handling and P16–47–49. See also interrupt handlers
last-accessed P16–44
numbers P16–45, P16–155
online, number supported P16–45
output P16–42–43
sequential-access P16–43
volume control blocks and P16–47. See also volume(s)
device-driver entry point
ProDOS #21
device-driver events P16–69, P16–73
device-driver table ProDOS #20
device-independence P16–91
device-interface tool sets P1–21
devices ProDOS #20
devlst ProDOS #20
devNotAtAddr GSTR–3–25, GSTR–3–29, GSTR–B–4
DEVSPEC GSF–156
DevSpec $30–$3F error CTR–151
DHires soft switch ETR–30
DHires switch CTR–46, CTR–102, CTR–103
DIAGMOUSE GSF–209
diagnostic routines GSF–3, GST–70
diagnostics ROM ETR–168
dial GSTR–4–4
dialog box GSTR–1–3, GSTR–6–1,
GSTR–6–4, 6–5, IIGS #38
modal GSTR–6–5
modeless GSTR–6–5
standard GSTR–22–3
dialog boxes P1–21, P1–131–136
default button P1–139
message P1–135
modal P1–133, P1–139
modeless P1–133, P1–136
dialog item type GSTR–6–10–11
dialog items P1–137–140
defining with a template P1–140, P1–145
disabling P1–138
display rectangle P1–137, P1–139
inactive controls as P1–138
invisible P1–138
item ID P1–137, P1–139
item type P1–137, P1–138
Dialog Manager GSTR–55, GST–67,
GST–1–3, GSTR–1–6, GST–6–1–90, GSTR–24–21, IIGS #38, PI–21,
PI–116, PI–131–144, PI–308
constants GSTR–6–88–99
data structures GSTR–6–89–90
error codes GSTR–6–90
shutdown routines GSTR–6–29
startup routines GSTR–6–28
status routines GSTR–6–30
using GSTR–6–23–24
version number routines GSTR–6–29
dialog pointer GSTR–6–19
dialog record GSTR–6–19, P1–137
dialog scroll bar action procedure
GSTR–6–15
dialog window GSTR–6–7, PI–116, P1–136
DIAGOS.ASM PI–353–360
DIAGOS.CC PI–400–404
DIAGOS.PAS PI–429–435
DialogBootInit GSTR–6–27
DialogReset GSTR–6–30
dialogs, programming techniques P1–141
DialogSelect GSTR–6–24, GSTR–6–38–39
DialogShutdown GSTR–6–23, GSTR–6–29, PI–58
DialogStartUp GSTR–6–23, GSTR–6–28, PI–45
DialogStatus GSTR–6–30
DialogVersion GSTR–6–29
dials PI–125
DIB ProDOS #21, SmartPort #4, #7
dictionaries See relocation
directories See relocation
dictionaries
differences among Apple II models
ETR–227–232
differences between original and enhanced Apple II ETR–xix–xxii
ASCII input mode ETR–106–107
COUT1 subroutine ETR–56
interrupt support ETR–132, ETR–148–149
microprocessor ETR–6
Miri-Assembler ETR–123
differences between original and enhanced Apple IIe, Monitor
Search command ETR–110
MouseText ETR–17, ETR–20
slot 3 ETR–144
tabbing in Applesoft ETR–269
using Caps Lock ETR–49
DiffText GSTR–16–78
DIG GSF–256
GST–69, GSTR–21–3, P1–8, PI–175
A/D Converter register GSH–103
Frequency High and Frequency Low registers GSH–106
Oscillator Control registers GSH–104–106
Oscillator Data registers GSH–106
Oscillator Enable register GSH–103
Oscillator Interrupt register GSH–102
register addresses GSH–265
Volume registers GSH–106
Wavetable Pointer registers GSH–108–109
Wavetable Size registers GSH–107
digital samples GSTR–24, GST–25
digital-to-analog converter GSH–110
dimmed menu item GTR–13–6,
GSTR–13–8, GSTR–13–60
DIN connectors GSTR–42
DIP socket, game connector GSTR–41
direct memory access GSH–13, GSH–167, GSH–188
cards GSH–168
daisy chain GSH–171, GSH–183–184
direct page GSF–12, GSF–15, GSF–28,
GSH–38, GSH–44, GSH–43, GST–82, GST–84, GST–89, GST–113,
GSTR–6–28, GSTR–25–43, PI–4,
PI–202, PI–203, PI–283
direct page and stack P16–64, P16–75–79, P16–200–201. See also stack(s)
allocation at run time P16–77–78
automatic allocation of P16–75–76
default allocation P16–78
definition during program development P16–76
direct register P16–70, P16–77–79,
P16–104
direct-page/stack segments P16–76,
P16–78, P16–186, P16–224. See also segment(s)

18 X-Ref Index 1/3/89
system P16-10, P16-12, P16-14, P16-18
TOOL SETUP P16-53, P16-56
transferring data to and from P16-21
tree P16-29, P16-262, P16-271-272
tree, growing P16-267-269
types. See file types
using P16-18-25
volume directory. See volume(s)
file(s), writing P16-24, P16-143-144
fileInfoType GSTR-24-26
filename GSTR-22-20, GSTR-22-24,
GSTR-22-32, P1-208
filenames
extensions P16-58, P16-74
number of characters in P16-14
requirements of P16-18
typographic convention for P16-xxi
files P1-215
Files utility (APW) P1-224
files
accessing P1-162-165
closing P1-210
controlling user access to P1-218
creating P1-210
destroying P1-210
flushing P1-210
HodgePodge and P1-33, P1-34
I/O buffer P1-210
opening P1-162, P1-210
reading P1-211-214
saving P1-164
writing P1-211-2 P1-14
fileType GSTR-22-24, GSTR-22-32
filling calls, Apple II operating systems P16-286-287
filling calls, ProDOS 16. See system
calls or specific call
FillListSessions ProDOS #21
Fill Memory command GSF-59
fill mode GSTR-16-34, P1-100
FillArc GSTR-16-94
filling GSTR-16-20
filling (QuickDraw II) P1-87, P1-91
FillOval GSTR-16-95
FillPoly GSTR-16-96, GSTR-16-103
FillRect GSTR-16-97
FillRgn GSTR-16-98
FillRect GSTR-16-99
filter mask, changing GSF-63
filter procedure GSTR-6-22, GSTR-6-25-26, GSTR-6-33, GSTR-6-37,
GSTR-6-66, GSTR-22-22
filter procedure, standard GSTR-6-25
FilterProc IGS #38
filtering GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
FindControl GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-5
GSTR-7-58, P1-1 P1-29
FindDim GSTR-6-48
finder P16-207-208
FindFamily GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-32-33
FindFontStats GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-34-35
FindHandle call (Memory Manager)
P16-79, GSTR-12-25
FindMaxWidth PI-105
FindWindow GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-58,
GSTR-5-26, GSTR-13-12, GSTR-
13-66, GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-48-
49, GSTR-25-123, GSTR-25-124,
GSTR-25-125, GSTR-25-126, PI-
74, PI-114, PI-115, PI-129, PI-
152
Fill GSTR-25-85-86, GSTR-25-141
firmTaskErr GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
firmware
CTR-13, GSH-43, GSH-233, P16-6,
P16-70-72, PI-xviii, PI-294
firmware routines,
Monitor CTR-112-115
mouse Monitor CTR-193-194
video CTR-116-118
firmware
80-column ETX-xxi, ETR-49-50
addresses CTR-322-327
Alternate Display Mode GSTR-47,
GSTR-68
application program access to GSTR-93-94
auxiliary ETX-86-93
background printing GSTR-38
bypassing application programs GSTR-92-93
clock rate GSTR-84
control of shadowing GSTR-86
DeskTop Bus GSTR-43
disk I/O CTR-120
disk-port GSTR-40
display mode CTR-104
display subroutines GSTR-32
enhanced video CTR-249-250
entry points CTR-23, GSF-224-257
features GSTR-46
I/O CTR-71-73, ETR-46-71
I/O routines GSF-11-16, GSF-79
ID bytes support GSTR-222-223
interrupt support GSTR-54-55
memory use GSTR-18
Monitor I/O firmware GSTR-51-54
Monitor programs GSTR-47
Monitor subroutines ETR-46-71
mouse CTR-191-196
Fascal 1.1 protocol ETR-68-71,
ETR-145-146
protocols CTR-72-73
read routine GSTR-38
reference manual GSTR-109
resident desk accessories GSTR-46
ROM available GSTR-46
serial port 1 CTR-160
serial port 2 CTR-174
serial ports GSTR-33-39
setting of direct page location GSTR-
79
setting of stack location GSTR-79
slot ETR-69
Smartport CTR-124
SmartPort routines GSTR-40-41
See also specific type
firstItem GSTR-13-19, GSTR-13-20,
GSTR-13-88
Find2Prac GSTR-9-10
Find2Long GSTR-9-11
Find2X GSTR-9-12
FindAppleMenu GSTR-5-5, GSTR-5-6,
GSTR-5-8, GSTR-5-15, GSTR-5-
20, PI-47, PI-158
FixATan2 GSTR-9-13
FixDiv GSTR-9-14
fixed (memory-block attribute) PI-
187, PI-189, PI-195
fixed address (memory-block
attribute) PI-187
fixed bank (memory-block attribute)
PI-187
fixed block GSTR-12-7
fixed type (Integer Math) P1-179
fixed value GSTR-xxx, GSTR-9-1
fixed-width font GSTR-16-226
FindFontMenu GSTR-8-14, GSTR-8-15,
GSTR-8-31, GSTR-8-36-37,
GSTR-8-45, GSTR-C-5
FixMenuBar GSTR-13-8, GSTR-13-9,
GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-33, GSTR-
13-41, IIGS #43, PI-47
FixMul GSTR-9-15
FixRatio GSTR-9-16, GSTR-16-217,
GSTR-16-253
FixRound GSTR-9-17
flag GSTR-2-7
flag inputs CTR-23
flag word P16-168, P16-245
flag word (QUIT) PI-202
any-key-down ETR-13
flag-modification commands GSF-38
flags GSF-8, GSF-12, GSF-14, GSF-16,
GSF-35-38
flags e, m, x GSTR-83
husty P16-36, P16-96
e-, m-, and x-flags P16-64

foreground color GSTR–16-26, GSTR–16-54, GSTR–16-57, GSTR–16-125, GSTR–16-226, GSTR–16-228
foreground color, foreground pixel GSTR–16-27, GSTR–16-30, GSTR–16-52
foreground pixels PI–93
foreign language keyboards Ile #3
Format GSF–5, GSF–128, GSF–139, GSF–147
format ProDOS #19
FORMATTER ProDOS #5, #16
FORMATTER.CODE Pascal #12
FORMATTER.DATA Pascal #12
FORMATTER.TEXT Pascal #12
formatting ProDOS #16
formatting of text display GST–67
formatting. See disks; FORMAT call; volume(s)
FORMDISK.TEXT Pascal #12
Fortran CTR–330, ETR–235, GST–103
FPI GSTR–12, GST–13, GST–75, GST–77, IIGS #21
FPT. See function pointer table
frac type (Integer Math) PI–179
frac value GSTR–xxx, GSTR–9–1
Frac2Fix GSTR–9–18
Frac2X GSTR–9–19
FracCos GSTR–9–20
FracDiv GSTR–9–21
FracMul GSTR–9–22
FracSin GSTR–9–23
FracSqrt GSTR–9–24
fragmentation of memory GSTR–12–6–8
frame PI–81
frame color GSTR–25–99
frame region GSTR–25–9
frame type GSTR–25–69
frame,
alert window PI–110
colors PI–111
controls PI–129, PI–130
document window PI–110
region PI–112
window PI–109
FrameArc GSTR–16–101
frameColor GSTR–25–18, GSTR–25–142
FrameG1oval GSTR–16–102
FramePoly GSTR–16–103
FrameRect GSTR–16–104
FrameRgn GSTR–16–105
FrameRect GSTR–16–106
framing GSTR–16–20
framing (QuickDraw II) PI–87, PI–91
free space GSF–308, GSF–310
Free-Form Sound Player (Macintosh) GST–60, GST–62
Free-Form Synthesizer IIGS #37, PI–176
Free-Form Synthesizer playing status GSTR–21–13
FREEBUFR ProDOS #9
FreeMem GSTR–12–26
French keyboard CTR–373–374
treqOffset GSTR–21–17, GSTR–21–37
Frequency High and Frequency Low
registers (DOC) GSH–106
FromDesk GSTR–25–40, GSTR–25–139
FS character ETR–55
FST GS/O #1
fstSpDelKey GSTR–14–65
fTitle GSTR–25–141
full native mode. See native mode
full pathname PI–208
full-duplex operation CTR–182–184
fullPathname GSTR–22–24, GSTR–22–32PI–208
funcNotFoundErr GSTR–24–7, GSTR–24–26, GSTR–B–2
function keys CTR–4
function names, typographic
convention for P16–xxi
function number GSTR–A–, PI–66, PI–274
function pointer table (FPT) GSTR–24–7, GSTR–24–8, GSTR–24–19,
GSTR–A–2, GSTR–A–6
fVs GSTR–25–85–86, GSTR–25–141
FWEntry GSTR–6–22, GSTR–14–5,
GSTR–14–17–18, PI–294
fZoom GSTR–25–85–86, GSTR–25–141
G

G game I/O connectors PI–2, PI–8
G game I/O GSH–155–158
G game I/O port GST–4, GST–41

game I/O connectors ETR–13
port GSH–155–158
signals ETR–190–191
game input CTR–198–201
characteristics CTR–199
game paddles CTR–198, CTR–287
game paddles GST–41
games PI–68
G3ASASLC GSF–227
GB. See generator control block
gcAddrTable GSTR–21–23, GSTR–21–36
GCXR CTR–247
gen0off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
gen10off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
gen11off GSTR–21–36
gen12off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
gen13off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
ngen14off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
gen1off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
gen2off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
ngen3off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
ngen4off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
ngen5off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
ngen6off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
ngen7off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
ngen8off GSTR–21–36
ngen9off GSTR–21–19, GSTR–21–36
ngenAvail GSTR–21–37
General Logic Unit IIGS #37, CTR–15, CTR–245–246, CTR–365
General Purpose Interface Bus Ile #7
generator GSTR–21–5
generator control block (GCB) GSTR–21–6, GSTR–21–1, address table
GSTR–21–22, GSTR–21–23
generator status word GSTR–21–12
generator table GSTR–21–22, GSTR–21–23
generator-to-oscillator translation GSTR–21–29
generators (sound) PI–176
geneva GSTR–8–4, GSTR–8–51
genTable GSTR–21–23, GSTR–21–36
German keyboard CTR–376–377
GET command ETR–269
Get Load Segment Info call (System Loader) PI–206, PI–238–239
Get Pathname call (System Loader) PI–242–243
Get User ID call (System Loader) PI–240–241
Get Version Number command GSF–192
GET816LEN GSF–230
GetAbsClamp GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-38
GetAbsScale GSTR-3-15
GetAddr GSTR-7-22, GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-19-21, IIgs #18
parameter reference numbers GSTR-14-20
GetAddress GSTR-16-107-108
GetAlertStage GSTR-6-49
GetArcRot GSTR-16-109
GetBackColor GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-110
GetBackPat GSTR-16-111
GetBarColors GSTR-13-42-43
GETBUF PrDOS #9
GetCareTime GSTR-7-15, GSTR-7-36
GetChar routine Miscellaneous #10
GetCharExtra GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-112
GetClip GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-113
GetClipHandle GSTR-16-114
GetColorEntry GSTR-16-115
GetColorTable GSTR-16-116
GetContentDraw GSTR-25-51
GetContentOrigin GSTR-25-52
GetContentIgn GSTR-25-53
GetControlDltem GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-50
GetCtlAction GSTR-4-59
GetCtrlpage GSTR-4-60
GetCtlParams GSTR-4-61
GetCtlRefCon GSTR-4-62
GetCtlTitle GSTR-4-65
GetCtlValue GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-64
GetCursorAddr GSTR-16-117
GetDASPtr GSTR-5-16
GetDataType GSTR-25-54
GetDbTime GSTR-7-13, GSTR-7-37
GetDefButton GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-51
GetDefProc GSTR-25-55
GetDeskPat GSTR-25-41, GSTR-25-139
GetDesktop GSTR-25-40, GSTR-25-139
GetDltemBox GSTR-6-52
GetDltemType GSTR-6-53
GetDltemValue GSTR-6-12, GSTR-6-54
GetDTR GSTR-23-22
GetErrGloba Is GSTR-23-23
GetErrorDevice GSTR-23-23
GetFamInfo GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-23, GSTR-8-41, PI-97, PI-105
GetFamNum GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-23, GSTR-8-42, IIgs #41
GetFSize GSTR-16-62, GSTR-16-118
GetFSizecalls GSTR-16-62
GetFirstDltem GSTR-6-55
GetFirstWindow GSTR-25-56
GetFont GSTR-8-16, GSTR-16-119
GetFontFlags GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-120, PI-105
GetFontGlobals GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-62, GSTR-16-121, GSTR-16-124, GSTR-16-150
GetFontID GSTR-8-16, GSTR-16-122
GetFontInfo GSTR-16-62, GSTR-16-123, PI-105, PI-123
GetFontLore GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-62, GSTR-16-118, GSTR-16-121, GSTR-16-124, GSTR-16-150
GetForeColor GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-125
GetFramColor GSTR-25-20, GSTR-25-57, IIgs #45
GetFuncPtr GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-7
GetGrafProc GSTR-16-126
GetHandle GSTR-13-39
GetHandleSize GSTR-12-27
GetlBuffer GSF-101
GetInfo AppleTalk #1, #2
GetInfoDraw GSTR-25-58
GetInfoRefCon GSTR-25-59
GetlnGlobals GSTR-23-24
getInitTotal GSTR-6-15, GSTR-6-88
getInitValue GSTR-6-15, GSTR-6-88, GSTR-6-15, GSTR-6-88
GetInputDevice GSTR-23-25
GetInputlnf o GSF-96, GSF-105, GSF-184
GetIRQEnable GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-23-24
GetText GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-56
GetListDefProc GSTR-11-18
GETLN GSF-21, GSF-71, GSF-74-75, GSF-79, GSF-246
GETLN buffer PrDOS #1
Getln routine CTR-36, CTR-59-60,CTR-78,CTR-82,CTR-205, GSF-53, escape codes CTR-60-62
GETLN subroutine ETR-58, ETR-62-64, ETR-222
editing with ETR-63-64
input buffer ETR-78
line length ETR-3
used by Monitor ETR-101
with 80-column card ETR-269
GETLN0 GSF-247
GETLN1 GSF-247
Getln routine CTR-82
GETLN1 subroutine ETR-222
GETLN2 GSF-246
GETLNZ routine CTR-82
GETLNZ subroutine ETR-222
GetMasterSCB GSTR-16-127
GetMaxGrow GSTR-25-60
GetMenuBar GSTR-13-44
GetMenuFlag GSTR-13-45
GetMenuPtr GSTR-13-46
GetMenuTitle GSTR-13-47
getMesse ge GSTR-24-15, GSTR-24-26
GetMItHandle GSTR-13-39, GSTR-13-48
GetMItem GSTR-13-16, GSTR-13-49
GetMItemFlag GSTR-13-50
GetMItemMark GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-51
GetMItemStyle GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-52
GetModeBits GSF-95, GSF-100
GetMouse GSTR-7-14, GSTR-7-38
GetMouseClamp GSTR-14-31
GetMouseClamp Mouse #7
GetMTleStart GSTR-13-53
GetMTleWidth GSTR-13-54
GetNewDltem GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-57-58
GetNewID GSTR-12-11, GSTR-12-35, GSTR-14-57-58
GetNewModalDialog GSTR-6-7, GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-59-60, GSTR-22-4, IIgs #38, PI-134, PI-142
GetNextDltem GSTR-6-61
Desk Manager and GSTR-7-40
GetNextWindow GSTR-25-56, GSTR-25-61
GETNUM GSF-256
GetNumNDAs GSTR-5-17
GetOSEvent GSTR-7-41
GetOutbuff IIgs #16
GetOutBuffer GSF-97, GSF-98, GSF-101
GetOutGlobals GSTR-23-26
GetOutPutDevice GSTR-23-27
GetPage GSTR-25-62
GetPen GSTR-16-128, PI-106
GetPenMask GSTR-16-129
GetPenMode GSTR-16-130
GetPenPat GSTR-16-131
GetPenSize GSTR-16-132
GetPenState GSTR-16-133, IIgs #44
GetPsSave GSTR-16-134
GetPixel GSTR-16-135
GetPolySave GSTR-16-136

28 X-Ref Index 1/3/89
greater than sign (>) as prompt character ETR-62
green320 GSTR-16-274
green640 GSTR-16-274
greenMask GSTR-16-274
grid values GSTR-25-45
grow box/area PI-48, PI-114
grow image GSTR-25-75-76
grow region GSTR-25-9, GSTR-25-11
growBox GSTR-4-86
growColor GSTR-25-13, GSTR-25-142
growNorBack GSTR-4-24
growOutline GSTR-4-24
growProc GSTR-4-13, GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-73, GSTR-4-85
GrowSize GSTR-4-65
GrowWindow GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-75-76, GSTR-25-125, PI-114
GS character ETR-55

handshaking GSF-84-85
handshaking, protocol GSF-89
handshaking, settings GST-34
HandToHand GSTR-12-28
HandToPtr GSTR-12-29
hard disk support GST-6
hard disk with Pascal ETR-xxii
hardware CTR-365
hardware GST-11-26, GST-92-93, GST-109
hardware IIGS #28
hardware interrupt enable states GSTR-14-23
addresses CTR-316-321, CTR-353-356
configuration P16-87
interrupts. See interrupt(s)
registers P16-64
requirements for ProDOS 16 P16-xviii-xix
stack P16-75
See Apple IIGS
hAxisOnly GSTR-4-53, GSTR-4-86
hbQueueBadErr GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-2
header fields. See fields; headers; segment(s)
header section GSTR-5-3, GSTR-5-6 headers
directory P16-256-259. See also volume(s)
segment P16-186, P16-299. See also segment(s)
subdirectory P16-259-261. See also subdirectories
headphone jack CTR-8, CTR-256
HEADR GSF-244
HeartBeat PI-181
HeartBeat Interrupt Handler GSTR-14-22, GSTR-14-27, GSTR-14-49
heartbeat interrupt queue GST-65
HeartBeat Interrupt Task queue GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-27, GSTR-14-48, GSTR-14-50, GSTR-14-52, GSTR-14-53
HeartBeat Interrupt Task queue PI-181
helvetica GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
Hewlett-Packard Interface Bus Ile #7
Hex2Int GSTR-9-25
Hex2Long GSTR-9-26
hexadecimal CTR-387-389
hexadecimal GSF-21, GSF-25, GSF-26, GSF-32, GSF-53, GSF-115, GSF-116
hexadecimal arithmetic CTR-215
hexadecimal arithmetic ETR-116
hexadecimal notation CTR-225
hexadecimal numbers GSH-246-248
hexadecimal values ETR-12
hexadecimal values, converting to decimal ETR-238-239
hexadecimal values, converting to negative decimal ETR-239-240
hexadecimal, math GSF-42
hexadecimal, numbers, converting GSF-41, GSF-65
Hexit GSTR-9-27
HFS UniDisk 3.5 #4
HGR Ile #3
Hi-Res PI-7
Hi-Res graphics GSTR-20-21
in Apple II family GST-5
linear mapping option
incompatible GST-87
shadow register GST-86
shadowing GST-90, GST-113
specifications GST-3
Hi-Res video display PI-7
HideControl GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-45, GSTR-4-66, GSTR-11-111 GSTR-16-156
HideDItem GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-62, GSTR-6-81, GSTR-6-85
HidePen GSTR-16-156, GSTR-17-9, GSTR-17-14
HidePleaseWait PI-46, PI-134
HideWindow GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-78, GSTR-25-99, GSTR-25-113, GSTR-25-114, PI-114
hierarchical disk directories GST-6
hierarchical file system P16-7, P16-283, PI-288
high-level calls GST-65
high-level Event Manager GSTR-7-3
high-level languages PI-65 PI-282-283, PI-290
high-order byte, of handles PI-190
high-order word GST-9-28
high-resolution Ile #3, IIGS #29
high-resolution graphics
bit patterns ETR-241-242
colors ETR-24-25, ETR-183-184
display pages ETR-23, ETR-27
double CTR-97-98, CTR-111, CTR-269
generation ETR-183-184
map CTR-110
map ETR-36
ETR-23, ETR-27, ETR-79
highlighted control GSTR-4-7
highlighting PI-72, PI-116, PI-128, PI-153
high-resolution display, memory banks for PI-16-35
HilitControl GSTR-4-7, GSTR-4-67, GSTR-6-11, GSTR-6-40, GSTR-11-11
HilitMenu PI-54
HilitWindow GSTR-25-36, GSTR-25-79
hiMouseRes GSTR-14-65
HIRES Ile #3, IGS #29
Hires soft switch ETR-29, ETR-30, ETR-89
HiRes switch CTR-45,CTR-103,CTR-241,CTR-243,354
HiWord GSTR-9-28, PI-54
HLINE GSF-79, GSF-226, CTR-112,CTR-114
HLINE subroutine ETR-67, ETR-222
HLock GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-30, PI-104, PI-211
HLockAll GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-31
HodgePodge PI-30-60. See also specific subroutine, PI-35, PI-59-60, PI-303-304
"About..." dialog box PI-142-144
assembly language PI-65-66, PI-190, PI-202, PI-311-376
auxiliary type PI-218
C PI-377-412
code-listing conventions PI-xxii, PI-36
control manipulation PI-130
desk accessory support PI-158
differences between the languages PI-69, PI-74, IO5
direct-page/stack space PI-206
Edit menu disabled PI-161
error handling PI-306-310
event handling PI-51-57
files PI-33, PI-34
font windows PI-34, PI-53, PI-104-106, PI-305
general description PI-xx
languages PI-35
Macintosh resource equivalents PI-285
main event loop PI-48-50
main program PI-36, PI-37
memory-block attributes PI-188
menus PI-31-33, PI-47, PI-153
mouse events and PI-71
organization of PI-35-36
Pascal PI-36, PI-413-446
picture files PI-215-217, PI-218
picture windows PI-33, PI-52-53, PI-103-104, PI-505-306
QuickDraw II coordinates and PI-82
QUIT PI-202
scrolling and PI-117
shutting down PI-57, PI-58-59
starting up PI-38-47, PI-64
subroutines PI-35, PI-59-60, PI-302-304
System loader and PI-195
TaskMaster and PI-51-53, PI-75, PI-286
update routine PI-116
User ID use PI-193
versions of PI-35
windows PI-56-57, PI-72, PI-120-124
HOMEMOUSE GSF-209, GSF-213, GSF-14-32, CTR-194
homing the cursor GST-54
hook table GSF-145
horizontal blanking PI-100
horizontal resolution movement
GSTR-25-45
horizontal resolution
AppleColor 100 monitor GST-19
Super Hi-Res graphics GST-22
horizontal-count bits CTR-259-260
horScroll GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-72, GSTR-4-85
hot spot GSTR-16-37
HP.ASM PI-312-314
HP.CC PI-378-381
HP.H PI-411-412
HP.PAS PI-414-418
HPIB Ile #7
hPic GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
hPrint GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
HP1R CTR-38
HP1XR CTR-38
HP2R CTR-39,CTR-269
HPR2X CTR-39,CTR-269
hrzt50060 GSTR-14-64
HTAB command ETR-xxi
HTAB command, with original Apple
Ile ETR-271-272
Human Interface Guidelines GSTR-xGSTR-xxii, GSTR-6-7, GSTR-6-8, GSTR-6-18, GSTR-6-22, GSTR-6-25, GSTR-10-1, GSTR-13-1, GSTR-13-7, GSTR-13-9, GSTR-15-20, GSTR-25-79, P16-90-91. See also programming, PI-xix-xx, PI-11-13, PI-139, PI-146, PI-277
humidity, operating ETR-158
HUnlock GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-32, PI-104, PI-211
HUnlockAll GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-33
hybrid applications PF-292-293
hybrid program design GST-89
I
I command CTR-156,CTR-170,CTR-228
I/O See also slots, CTR-357, GSH-7, GSH-17, GSH-22, GSH-167-171
I/O buffering GST-37-38
I/O directing routines GSTR-23-3-4
I/O expansion slots GSH-162-189
cards for slot 3 GSH-183
direct memory access GSH-168
expansion ROM space GSH-175-176
expansion slot signals GSH-165-166
I/O cards GSH-168
I/O memory space GSH-181-182
loading GSH-171
peripheral-card I/O space GSH-174-175
peripheral-card RAM space GSH-177
peripheral-card ROM space GSH-175
RAM GSH-180
slot number GSH-178-179
I/O features GST-27-43
I/O links GSF-70
I/O links GST-51-52
I/O memory space GST-61, GST-79
I/O port 5 GSF-114
I/O redirection ProDOS #3
I/O SELECT Ile #2, #4
I/O select signal GST-30
I/O SELECTe signal ETR-133-134
I/O shadowing GST-29, GST-54, GST-78, GST-85, GST-90, GST-113
I/O slot addresses GST-30
I/O STROBE Ile #2, #4
I/O strobe signal GST-31
I/O subroutines IGS #2
I/O addressing ETR-138-139
buffer files PI-210
built-in PI-2, PI-8-9
cassette CTR-364

1/3/89 X-Ref Index 31
introduction to P16–94–96
modifying P16–88
number supported (user-installed) P16–48
Scheduler and P16–71
system calls during P16–96
interrupt mode GSTR–16–34
interrupt mode (Note Sequencer) PI–178
Interrupt Request CTR–281
Interrupt Request (IRQ) line GSF–171, P16–49
interrupt routines. See interrupt handlers
interrupt source GSTR–14–5
reference numbers GSTR–14–26
interrupt vector ETR–151, GSTR–54, GSTR–65
interrupt vector table P16–95, P16–175, P16–177
interrupt(s)
allocating and deallocating P16–95
 disabling P16–81, P16–100
 handling. See interrupt handlers
number of interrupting devices handled P16–9
priority rankings P16–48
support of, similarity among operating systems P16–288
system calls during P16–96
and table. See interrupt vector table
unclaimed P16–49, P16–83, P16–95
using P16–83. See also programming
interrupt
priorities GSF–177–180
processing GSF–181–182
vectors GSF–177
and card in auxiliary slot ETR–50
and shadowing GSF–80, GSF–85
and stack pointer GSF–84
by AppleTalk GSF–38
by VBL GSF–4
bypassing CTR–345–347
compared to events PI–67
daisy chain ETR–193, ETR–204
daisy chains GSH–171, GSH–183–184
definition ETR–147
disabling PI–293
e external CTR–342–343
EXTINT CTR–276
handling CTR–334–345
keyboard CTR–341–342
original Apple Ile differences ETR–148
oscillator GSF–104, GSH–105
priority ETR–147
scan-line GSF–54, GSH–84, GSF–86
sequence ETR–152
serial CTR–343–345
Smartport CTR–130, CTR–138
sources CTR–338–339
VBIInt CTR–187–188, CTR–190, CTR–243
vectors CTR–333–334
XInt CTR–190
YInt CTR–190
inThumb GSTR–6–89
INTMGV GSF–264
intrpmgr GSTR–14–67
inUpArrow GSTR–6–89
inUserItem GSTR–6–89
isValidCtlVal GSTR–15–49
InvAllRgn GSTR–25–81, IIGS #10, PI–117, PI–118
inverse characters CTR–69, CTR–70, CTR–88–89, Mouse #6
inverse display CTR–214
inverse display format ETR–19–20, ETR–57–58, ETR–114
inverse flag CTR–69, CTR–70
inverse text GSF–78
inverse video GSF–39, GSF–71
InvertArc GSTR–16–164
inverting GSTR–16–20
inverting (QuickDraw II) PI–87, PI–91
InvertOval GSTR–16–165
InvertPoly GSTR–16–166
InvertRect GSTR–16–167
InvertRgn GSTR–16–168, IIGS #34
InvertRRect GSTR–16–169
invisible controls PI–128
invisible dialog items PI–138
IO.ASM PI–371–372
IOERROR GSF–156
IOError $27 error CTR–150
IOLC bit GSF–85
ioLoc IgS #2
IOREST subroutine ETR–223
IORESULT Ile #5
IORTS GSF–254
IOSAVE subroutine ETR–223
IOU Ile #2
IOUDIS soft switch ETR–30
IOUDis switch CTR–45, CTR–103, CTR–189, CTR–355
IRQ CTR–334, GSF–180
IRQ vector ETR–147–148
IRQ. See Interrupt Request Line
IOSEC GSF–269
IOAPTALK GSF–266
IODSKACC GSF–268
IOQ.EXT GSF–269
IOQ.FLUSH GSF–269
IOQ.KBD GSF–268
IOQ.MICRO GSF–269
IOQ.MOUSE GSF–267
IQ.OTHER GSF–269
IQ.QTR GSF–268
IQ.REPONSE GSF–268
IOQ.SCAN GSF–267
IQ.SERIAL GSF–266
IQ.SOUND GSF–267
IQ.SQG GSF–268
IQ.VBL GSF–267
irqActive GSTR–14–66
irqAfighiHi GSTR–14–66
irqDataReg GSTR–14–66
irqIntFlag GSTR–14–66
irqLoc GSF–259
irqSerial1 GSTR–14–66
irqSerial2 GSTR–14–66
irqSendData GSTR–14–66
IRQVECT GSF–177
irqVolume GSTR–14–66
IRQe signal ETR–148
IsDialogEvent GSTR–6–24, GSTR–6–38, GSTR–6–63–64
ISO keyboard CTR–371
Italian keyboard CTR–378–379
italic convention GSTR–xxGSTR–xi
italic type style GSTR–16–258, GSTR–17–1, GSTR–17–3
italicMask GSTR–16–276
item character GSTR–13–13
item character (menu and item lines) PI–150
item descriptor GSTR–6–12–16
item ID GSTR–6–18, GSTR–6–55, GSTR–6–61, GSTR–13–14

34 X-Ref Index 1/3/89
dialogs PI-137, PI-139
menus PI-54, PI-151-152, PI-155
item line GSTR-13-13, GSTR-13-14, GSTR-13-75
item list GSTR-13-17
item number GSTR-13-22
item template GSTR-6-8-9, GSTR-6-19, GSTR-6-58
item type GSTR-6-10-11, GSTR-6-53
item value GSTR-6-12-16, GSTR-6-54
itemColor GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-18, GSTR-6-90
itemDescr GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-90
itemDisabling GSTR-6-11, GSTR-6-53, GSTR-6-82, PI-138
itemFlag GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-18, GSTR-6-90
itemID GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-90
ItemID2ParentNum GSTR-8-36, GSTR-8-45
itemNotFound GSTR-6-40, GSTR-6-46, GSTR-6-50, GSTR-6-53, GSTR-6-54, GSTR-6-56, GSTR-6-62, GSTR-6-76, GSTR-6-81, GSTR-6-82, GSTR-6-83, GSTR-6-84, GSTR-6-85, GSTR-6-90, GSTR-8-5
itemRect GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-90
items, dialog PI-137-140
items, menus PI-149
itemType GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-90
itemValue GSTR-6-9, GSTR-6-90
iTotBands GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
iTotCopies GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
iTotPages GSTR-15-41, GSTR-15-48
iVer GSTR-15-11, GSTR-15-47
IWM GSTR-5, GSTR-6, GSTR-12, GSTR-39, Miscellaneous #6, UniDisk 3.5 #5, GSF-5, GSF-110-111

J
jacks
  headphone CTR-8, CTR-256
  output CTR-8, CTR-256
Janus GSTR-2
jButton GSTR-7-51
jEvent GSTR-7-51
jGetMouse GSTR-7-51
jTickCount GSTR-7-51
jmp instruction GSF-47, GSF-50, GSF-65, GSF-66, GSF-145
ImageWriter GSTR-15-8-9
journal codes GSTR-7-20
journaling mechanism GSTR-7-19-20
joystick GSF-10, GSF-6, GSF-155, CTR-198, CTR-199, GSTR-41, CTR-43, P1-42, PI-8
JSL PI-294, See jump to subroutine long
JSR. See jump to subroutine
jump table GSTR-21-6, GSTR-21-22-23, PI-196, PI-198
jump table address GSTR-21-22-23
Jump Table Load call (System Loader) P16-195-196, P16-213
description of P16-247-248
Jump Table. See System Loader data tables
jump to subroutine (JSR) GSF-12, GSF-14, GSF-47, GSF-49, GSF-49, GSF-50, GSF-114, GSTR-33, GST-33, GST-97
jump to subroutine long (JSL) GSF-12, GSF-14, GSF-50, GSF-98, GST-152
Jump-Table-Loaded flag P16-201, P16-235
justification GSTR-10-4, GSTR-10-6, GSTR-10-7, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-36, GSTR-10-40, GSTR-10-42

K
K command CTR-156, CTR-170
K register GSF-35
kbInt GSTR-14-24, GSTR-14-66
KBDWAIT GSF-238
KBD4 signal ETR-187
kernel P16-5
kernel GSTR-16-27, GSTR-16-29, GSTR-16-46, GSTR-16-58
kernelMax GSTR-16-47, GSTR-16-50
key block. See file blocks
key code GSTR-3-22, llc #3
key combinations. See Control-Reset Key
Key GLU (Keyboard General Logic Unit) GSTR-12
key lockout GSH-119
key rollover GSH-119
key-down event GSTR-6-39, GSTR-6-66, GSTR-6-73, GSTR-7-13, PI-151, PI-16, PI-69, PI-71-72, PI-73
KEYBOARD command ETR-115
Keyboard command GSF-40
Keyboard Data register GSH-123
keyboard encoder ETR-5, ETR-12
Keyboard General Logic Unit (Key GLU) GSTR-12
keyboard input switch (KSW) CTR-57, CTR-71, CTR-101
keyboard interrupt vector GSTR-7-15
keyboard interrupts GSTR-14-27
keyboard microcontroller GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-18
Keyboard Microprocessor (50740A) GSTR-12
keyboard ROM ETR-5
keyboard strobe ETR-13, GSH-120
keyboard
ADB Tool Set GSTR-70
automatic repeat function ETR-10
Canadian CTR-375
characteristics CTR-79
circuit diagram CTR-254
circuits ETR-187-188
DeskTop Bus support GSTR-42
differences in Apple II family ETR-227
Dvorak CTR-6-7, CTR-358, CTR-370
encoder CTR-78
English CTR-372
entering ASCII characters GSTR-49
Event Manager GSTR-65
features CTR-3
flag CTR-78
French CTR-373-374
German CTR-376-377
input buffer CTR-36, CTR-38
input buffering GSF-75
input switch (KSW) GSTR-52, GSTR-53
inputs CTR-78-82
interrupts CTR-340-342, GSF-180, GST-55
ISO CTR-371
Italian CTR-378-379
language codes GSF-190
layouts and codes CTR-3, CTR-6-7, CTR-366-381
memory locations ETR-12
Monitor I/O routines GSTR-51
reading GSTR-53
rollover ETR-10
Sholes CTR-6, CTR-358, CTR-367-368
signals CTR-255
specifications CTR-3, GSH-3
strobe CTR-78, CTR-339, CTR-353
switch CTR-3, CTR-6-7
less-than character (<) GSF-31, GSF-34
LEStartUp GSTR-10-10, GSTR-10-13, PI-45
LEStatus GSTR-10-15
LETextBox GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-40-41, PI-142
LTextBox GSTR-10-9, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-40, GSTR-10-42-44, GSTR-C-4, PI-142
LEToScroll GSTR-10-9, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-45, GSTR-20-16, GSTR-C-4
LEUpdate GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-46
LEVersion GSTR-10-14
leCTR-See line feed, GSF-242, ETR-53, ETR-54
libraries
run-time P16-193, P16-199-200, P16-205-206
subroutine P16-70, P16-80
library dictionary segment PI-238
library files GSTR-101, PI-238-239
library prefixes. See pathname prefixes
licensing Apple software PI-279
light pen GSTR-7-21
lightBlue320 GSTR-16-274
lightGray320 GSTR-16-274
lilac320 GSTR-16-275
limit rectangle GSTR-4-50, GSTR-4-53
line GSTR-16-22
Line GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-171
line (QuickDraw II) PI-87,88,89
line feed CTR-114,CTR-164,CTR-179, GSF-83
automatic GSF-90
masking GSF-91
masking I/O command GSTR-36
with SSC ETR-281
line length GSF-89
line width, I/O command GSTR-35
linear mapping option GSTR-87
LineEdit GSTR-59, GSTR-67
LineEdit scrap GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-13, GSTR-10-18, GSTR-10-19, GSTR-10-23, GSTR-10-33, GSTR-10-37, GSTR-10-45, GSTR-20-5, PI-141, PI-161
handle GSTR-10-33
LineEdit Tool Set GSTR-1-3, GSTR-1-8, GSTR-6-11, GSTR-10-1-48, PI-21, PI-64, PI-138, PI-139, PI-141-142
constants GSTR-10-47
data structures GSTR-10-47
error codes GSTR-10-48
shutdown routine GSTR-10-14
start up routine GSTR-10-13
status routine GSTR-10-15
using GSTR-10-9-11
version number routine GSTR-10-14
LineTo GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-103, GSTR-16-172
LinkEd PI-205, PI-234, GSTR-104
Linker (APW) GSTR-8, GSTR-101, GSTR-104, P16-89, PI-222, PI-223, P1-235-238
linkers P16-76, P16-89,189
links
I/O ETR-51
address storage ETR-78
changing ETR-140-141
Lisa PI-14
Lisp GSTR-103
"LISP" GSF-250
list GSTR-11-1
List command CTR-120-221,CTR-225, ETR-212-222
List command, Monitor GSTR-50
list control GSTR-11-2, GSTR-11-8, IIIGS #38
list control record GSTR-11-8-10
creating GSTR-11-16
list controls PI-131
List Directory command (Exerciser) P16-291
ListItem GSF-53, GSF-55, GSF-66
List Manager GSTR-1-4, GSTR-1-8, GSTR-11-1-26, PI-20, PI-64, PI-131
constants GSTR-11-25
data structures GSTR-11-25-26
shutdown routine GSTR-11-14
start up routine GSTR-11-13
status routine GSTR-11-15
using GSTR-11-11
version number routine GSTR-11-14
list record GSTR-11-2-8, GSTR-11-16
list sorting GSTR-11-23
ListBootinit GSTR-11-13
listCtl GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-5, GSTR-11-25
listDraw GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-5, GSTR-11-25
Listen GSF-, GSTR-3-28
Listen command (ADB) GSH-130, GSH-133
listFrameClr GSTR-11-10, GSTR-11-26
listngs, catalog. See cataloging disks
listMemHeight GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-25
listMemSize GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-25
listNorBackClr GSTR-11-10, GSTR-11-26
listNorTextClr GSTR-11-10, GSTR-11-26
listPointer GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-25
listRect GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-4, GSTR-11-25
listRefCon GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-7, GSTR-11-25
ListReset GSTR-11-15
lists PI-130-131
listScrollClr GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-7, GSTR-11-25
listSelBackClr GSTR-11-10, GSTR-11-26
listSelect GSTR-11-4, GSTR-11-5, GSTR-11-12
listSelTextClr GSTR-11-10, GSTR-11-26
ListShutDown GSTR-11-11, GSTR-11-14, PI-58
listSize GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-4, GSTR-11-25
ListStatus GSTR-11-12
ListShutDown GSTR-11-11, GSTR-11-14, PI-58
listSize GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-4, GSTR-11-25
ListVersion GSTR-11-14
listView GSTR-11-3, GSTR-11-4, GSTR-11-25
literal ASCII GSF-30, GSF-64
Lo-Res graphics GSTR-20-21
Alternate Display Mode GSTR-47, GSTR-68
animation GSTR-47
Monitor firmware routines GSTR-54
Load Segment By Name call (System Loader) P16-206, P16-234-236
Load Segment By Number call (System Loader) P16-206, P16-224, P16-235
description of P16-228-229
assigning in source code PI-234-236
assigning with LinkEd file PI-236
characteristics of PI-232
difference from object segments PI-230
dynamic PI-232
memory blocks and PI-194
number of PI-232
order in load file PI-235
types of (System Loader) PI-196
See segment(s); System Loader
load, initial P16-183-194, P16-205, P16-222-224, P16-240. See also System Loader
Loader Dumper PI-247, PI-249, PI-250
Loader Initialization call (System Loader) P16-215
Loader Reset call (System Loader) P16-220
Loader Shutdown call (System Loader) P16-217
Loader Startup call (System Loader) P16-216
Loader Status call (System Loader) P16-221
Loader Version call (System Loader) P16-218-219
LoadFont GSTR-8-15, GSTR-8-46-47
loading tool set GSTR-2-3-4
loading
applications (System Loader) 198, PI-199
 relocatable segments (System Loader) PI-197
 segments PI-198
tool sets PI-65
See application(s); System Loader
LoadOne PI-164, PI-211, PI-306
LoadOneTool GSTR-22-13, GSTR-22-16, GSTR-22-17, GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-10
LoadScrapt GSTR-20-15
LoadSysFont GSTR-8-48
local coordinates GSTR-4-8, GSTR-4-50, GSTR-4-69, GSTR-16-9, GSTR-16-16-17, GSTR-16-39, GSTR-16-154, GSTR-16-173, GSTR-25-30, GSTR-25-31, GSTR-25-82, PI-77, PI-82-84, PI-103, IO5, PI-117-118
local references PI-197
local-area network (AppleTalk) GST-38, See AppleTalk
LocalToGlobal GSTR-16-39, GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-173
location information PI-76, PI-79
location table GSTR-16-44, GSTR-16-49-50
locInfo record GSTR-16-13, GSTR-16-14, GSTR-16-138, GSTR-16-242, GSTR-16-277, GSTR-17-10
locked blocks. See memory blocks
locked handles PI-187, PI-189, PI-195, PI-277
locked movable block GSTR-12-7
locErr GSTR-12-36, GSTR-12-39, GSTR-12-40, GSTR-12-41, GSTR-12-43, GSTR-12-47, GSTR-B-2
locking block, memory GSTR-12-30, GSTR-12-31
LocInfo record PI-76, PI-79, PI-81, PI-103
locSize GSTR-16-274
Logo GST-103
Logo II CTR-330
london GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
long word, size of P16-33, P16-102
Long2Dec GSTR-9-31
Long2Fix GSTR-9-32
Long2Hex GSTR-9-33
LongDivide GSTR-9-34
longint type (Integer Math) PI-179
longint value GSTR-xxx, GSTR-9-1
LongMul GSTR-9-35
longStatText GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-12, GSTR-6-17, GSTR-6-88
longStatText2 GSTR-6-10, GSTR-6-12, GSTR-6-17, GSTR-6-88
losAngeles GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
lostDev GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-47, GSTR-B-4
lostFile GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-47, GSTR-B-4
low-level drive access UniDisk 3.5 #5
low-level Event Manager GSTR-7-3
low-level events GST-65
low-level sound routine GSTR-21-11, GSTR-21-6, GSTR-21-35
jump table GSTR-21-23
low-order word GSTR-9-36
low-pass filter with DOC GSTR-25
low-resolution graphics CTR-94-95, CTR-266-267, ETR-17, ETR-18, ETR-21-23
colors ETR-23
display pages ETR-27
generation ETR-181-182
map CTR-109, ETR-35
with TV set ETR-16
lowercase characters CTR-395, P16-18
LoWord GSTR-9-36, PI-43, PI-54, PI-121, PI-123

M
M command CTR-156, CTR-171
m flag GSF-37, P16-64
M register GSF-36
M2Select slot signal GST-28
MacGen utility (APW) GSTR-2-5, GST-105, PI-224
MACHID byte Miscellaneous #2, ProDOS #11, #15
machine configuration. See configuration
machine language ETR-120-122
Machine Language Interface CTR-125
machine registers GSF-12
machine state GSF-36
changing GSF-61
machine-language programs CTR-219-221, GSF-48-50
Macintosh GST-5-6, GST-59-62, P1-13, PI-14, PI-17, PI-167, PI-180, PI-90
Macintosh disks UniDisk 3.5 #4
Macintosh font record GSTR-16-41
Macintosh Interface Libraries GST-102
Macintosh Workshop C GST-102
Macintosh
Control Manager PI-288
converting programs to the Apple IIgs PI-282-289
desk accessories PI-156, PI-289
file system PI-287-288
Memory Manager PI-288
Print Manager PI-289
QuickDraw PI-284-287
resources PI-285
Standard File Package PI-289
TaskMater not available PI-286
also RAM; ROM, PI–2, PI–4, PI–5–6, PI–76
memory addresses CTR–20
display CTR–258, CTR–260
hardware page CTR–316–321
port I/O CTR–72–73
port screen hole CTR–74
text window CTR–68–69
memory attributes word GSTR–12–12–13, GSTR–12–37
$01 P16–33–34, P16–64, P16–124
$01–$E1 P16–64
$E0 P16–34
shadowing GST–79
memory block GSTR–12–1, GSTR–12–5
attributes GSTR–12–12–13, GSTR–12–37
locking GSTR–12–30, GSTR–12–31
unlocking GSTR–12–32, GSTR–12–33
See also block devices; Memory Manager, PI–187, PI–197, PI–247
absolute P16–40
addresses of P16–38
applications and P16–39
attributes P1–187, PI–188
attributes of P16–37
disposing P16–38, P16–245
disposing of P1–194, PI–277
handles to PI–189, See memory handles
load segments and PI–194
load-segment relationships (load
memory organization GST–15–18, GST–61
memory pages $00 (zero page) CTR–20, CTR–24, CTR–30–31
$01 (stack) CTR–20, CTR–24, CTR–25
$02 (input buffer) CTR–36
$03 (global storage, vectors) CTR–36, CTR–312
$04–$07 (TLB1) CTR–36–38
$08 (communication port buffers) CTR–38
$08–$0B (TLB2) CTR–38
disposal PI-193
dump CTR-206-208, ETR-102-104
entry points and fixed locations
P16-35-36
examining CTR-206, ETR-102
expansion GSTR-12-3, P16-33
expansion ROM space GSH-28,
GSH-175-176
filling ETR-117-118
for peripheral cards ETR-132-136
fragmentation GSTR-12-6-8
handles. See memory handles
I/O memory space GSH-181-182
I/O space ETR-142-143
I/O. See input/output
language card GSH-37
language–card areas P16-34, P16-
64
limits GSTR-12-3
locking GSTR-12-30, GSTR-12-31
main CTR-42-44, CTR-161, CTR-
175, CTR-269, CTR-313-314,
GSH-60
main bank GSH-44
management. See memory
management; Memory Manager
map GSH-27-28, P16-32, P16-35,
CTR-29, CTR-308-321
memory banks
$00 PI-4, PI-6, PI-192, PI-203,
PI-248, PI-267, PI-270, PI-293-
296
$01 PI-6, PI-295
$E1 PI-6, PI-267, PI-295
$EO PI-6, PI-295
Memory Manager GSH-27, GSH-43
minimum configuration PI-5
movable P16-82. See also memory
blocks
moving data CTR-210-211, GSF-31-
32
non-special P16-54
obtaining (applications) P16-39-40
organization ETR-74-98
peripheral-card GSH-174-177
peripheral-card ROM space GSH-
175
purging GSTR-12-39, GSTR-12-40,
GSTR-12-44, GSTR-12-45
RAM CTR-13, GSH-2, GSH-3,
GSH-7, GSH-12, GSH-22, GSH-
25, GSH-34, GSH-121
RAM expansion PI-5
range CTR-207
reallocation GSTR-12-41, GSTR-12-
42
refresh GSH-22
requesting P16-39-40
requirements (Apple 1IGS Toolbox)
PI-5
requirements of ProDOS 16 P16-
21
reserved P16-64
reserved pages GSH-28
ROM CTR-13, GSH-3, GSH-7,
GSH-12, GSH-34, GSH-121
ROM expansion PI-5
searching for bytes GSF-34
shadowing GSH-13, GSH-16-21,
GSH-45, P16-34, P16-64
shaping ETR-91
slot GSTR-29-32
special P16-34, P16-37, P16-62,
P16-78, P16-224, PI-187
text window locations ETR-56-57
units, size of P16-33
unlocking GSTR-12-32, GSTR-12-33
used by SSC ETR-287
video P16-33-34
memory-expandable IIC IIC #7
memPtr GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-26
memSelect GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-20,
GSTR-11-21
memSelected GSTR-11-6, GSTR-11-
25
menu GSTR-13-1
menu bar GSTR-13-4-5. See also
system menu bar, IIGS #3, PI-
115, PI-146, PI-147, PI-152
menu bar color GSTR-13-18, GSTR-
13-42-43, GSTR-13-69-70
menu bar record GSTR-13-17-18
menu bar
window GSTR-13-5
menu color GSTR-13-17
menu definition procedure GSTR-13-
21-28
menu global mask GSTR-13-59-60
menu height GSTR-13-33
menu help GSTR-13-60
menu ID GSTR-13-14, GSTR-13-16,
PI-54, PI-55, PI-151-152, 155
menu interface PI-13
menu item GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-50
menu item ID GSTR-8-31, GSTR-8-
45, GSTR-13-14, GSTR-13-79
menu item line GSTR-13-13, GSTR-
13-75
menu item number GSTR-13-22
menu item
blinking GSTR-13-76
checking GSTR-13-34
dimming GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-38,
GSTR-13-60
disabling GSTR-13-6, GSTR-13-38
marking GSTR-13-51, GSTR-13-80
mode settings, Monitor command
GSTR-49
mode BIC GSTR-16-19, GSTR-16-20,
GSTR-16-235, GSTR-16-275
mode Copy GSTR-16-19, GSTR-16-20,
GSTR-16-235, GSTR-16-275
mode BIC GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-260,
GSTR-16-275
mode BIC Copy GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-260,
GSTR-16-275
mode BIC OR GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-260,
GSTR-16-275
modeBIC XOR GSTR-16-30, GSTR-16-260,
GSTR-16-275
modeless dialog box GSTR-6-5,
GSTR-6-63, PI-133, PI-136
modern CTR-177-178, GSH-150,
GSH-173
modern communications GSF-84
modern firmware IIGS #13
modern port GSF-301, GST-34
modern port, commands CTR-170-
172
moderns GST-46
mode OR GSTR-16-19, GSTR-16-20,
GSTR-16-235, GSTR-16-275
modes (program) PI-12, PI-133
emulation and native PI-16-4, PI-16-9,
PI-16-7, PI-16-100
mode XOR GSTR-16-19, GSTR-16-20,
GSTR-16-235, GSTR-16-275
modification date and time P16-84-
86, P16-264, P16-276. See also
creation date and time;
programming
modification field P16-276
modifier key GSTR-7-3, PI-71
Modifier Key register GSH-123-124
modifier keys CTR-5, CTR-81, GSH-
120
modifiers CTR-7-6, GSTR-7-8,
GSTR-7-43, GSTR-7-51
modifiers (event-record field) PI-70,
PI-71
Modify Memory command
(Exerciser) PI-16-291
MON GSF-255
monaco GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
Monitor CTR-5, CTR-23, CTR-
36, CTR-57, CTR-59, CTR-
63, CTR-161, CTR-176, CTR-
258, CTR-312, CTR-356
Monitor command GSF-49
advanced CTR-216-218
debugging CTR-221
machine-language program CTR-
219-221
memory CTR-205-212
register CTR-212-213
repeating CTR-217-218
summary CTR-227-229
syntax CTR-205
Monitor firmware GSF-4, GSH-3,
GSH-28, GSH-43, GSH-184,
GSH-4, GST-5, GST-47-54
Monitor program P16-xix, P16-281,
P16-293, PI-267
debugging with PI-247-248
Monitor ROM ETR-168-169
listings ETR-307-347
Monitor
entry points CTR-322, CTR-326-327
firmware routines CTR-112-115
game support CTR-201
input routines CTR-82
interrupts CTR-74
memory location CTR-204
output CTR-270
speaker routines CTR-84
System ETR-100-129
command summary ETR-127-129
command syntax ETR-101
creating commands ETR-119
firmware subroutines ETR-46-71
returning to BASIC ETR-115
ROM listings ETR-307-347
use of page 3 ETR-8
use of page zero ETR-79
vectors CTR-326-327
See system Monitor
mono hi-res mode IIGS #29
monochrome hi-res mode IIGS #29
monochrome monitor GST-19, GST-
57
Monochrome/Color register GSH-
78-79
MONZ GSF-255
MONZ2 GSF-255
MONZ4 GSF-256
MountBootDisk PI-45, PI-307-308
mouse Iic #6, Mouse #3, PI-8, PI-10
mouse button GSTR-4-46
mouse clamp value GSTR-2-2, GSTR-
7-27
mouse clamping Mouse #7
Mouse Data register GSH-125
mouse firmware GSF-6, GSF-197-213
calls GSF-209
using GSF-202-205
mouse interrupt status GSTR-14-35
mouse interrupts GST-43
mouse location GSTR-16-37
mouse mode GSTR-14-36
mouse port
addresses CTR-325
I/O firmware protocol CTR-195
screen holes CTR-197
mouse programs, BASIC GSF-206-208
mouse routine GST-14-5
mouse routines (Miscellaneous Tool
Set) PI-182
mouse support GST-42-43
ADB Tool Set GST-70
desktop user interface GST-3
direct access GST-65
Event Manager GST-65
firmware GST-43
in Macintosh GST-6
interrupts GST-55
mouse
as hand controller CTR-198
assembly-language support CTR-
195-196
BASIC support CTR-195-196
button signals CTR-286
circuits CTR-285
clicks PI-14, PI-15, PI-48
connector CTR-284
connector signals CTR-284
defaults CTR-50
double-clicks PI-71
firmware entry points CTR-23
firmware routines CTR-193-194
I/O firmware support CTR-191-196
inputs CTR-186-198, CTR-282-
286, CTR-363
interrupts CTR-50, CTR-339-
340, CTR-345-346, CTR-354,
GSF-180, GSF-183
operating modes CTR-187-188
Pascal support CTR-195
port characteristics CTR-186
position clamps GSF-201
position data GSF-199-201
screen holes CTR-196-197
slot for PI-9
soft switches CTR-189-191
waveforms CTR-283
mouse-down event GST-4-10,
GSTR-5-26, GST-6-39, GSTR-6-
64, GSTR-6-66, GSTR-7-3,
GSTR-7-8, GSTR-7-13, GSTR-25-
11, GSTR-25-48-49, GSTR-25-92,
GSTR-25-127, GSTR-25-129-130,
PI-15, PI-16, PI-69, PI-71, PI-
73, PI-129
mouse-up event GST-7-3, GST-7-
13, PI-69, PI-71
mouseClamps GSTR-14-21, GSTR-14-
66
mouseDownEvt GST-7-7, GST-7-
50, GSTR-25-120, GSTR-25-121,
PI-69
mouseIntHnd GST-14-68
1/3/89 X-Ref Index 43
mouseOff GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-67
mouseOffVI GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-67
MousePaint, serial-port compatibility
GSTR-39
mouseSlot GSTR-14-66
MouseText CTR-69,CTR-70,CTR-88,CTR-90,CTR-360, GSH-59,
GSH-74, GSH-243, Mouse #6
characters ETR-17, ETR-19, ETR-246, CTR-91
mouseUpEvnt GSTR-7-7, GSTR-7-50, Pl-69
MouXI switch CTR-190
MouY1 switch CTR-190
movable (memory-block attribute)
Pl-188
MOVE GSF-250, GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-178, CTR-210-211,CTR-216-217,CTR-227, ETR-107-108,
ETR-117, GSF-31-32, GSF-45, GSF-59, ETR-223
MoveAux routine CTR-42-43
MoveControl GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-69, GSTR-11-11
moveCtl GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-39, GSF-4-86
moveIntrpt GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-67
moveIntrptVI GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-67
movement constraint values GSTR-4-55
movement interrupt mode: CTR-187-188
movement/button interrupt mode
CTR-188
MovePortTo GSTR-16-179
MoveTo GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-180,
MoveWindow GSTR-25-44, GSTR-25-82, GSTR-25-138
MPW IIGS assembler IIGS #33
MPW IIGS C IIGS #31
mSelected GSTR-13-87
MSGPOINTER GSF-275
msgPtrVctr GSTR-14-68
mSizeMsg GSTR-13-22, GSTR-13-25,
GSTR-13-87
MSLOT ETR-150, ETR-154, GSF-266,
IIGS #16, Miscellaneous #3
mstrIRQNotAssignErr GSTR-B-3
MTBootInit GSTR-14-6
MTReset GSTR-14-8
MTShutDown GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-17, PI-58
MTStartUp GSTR-2-1, GSTR-14-4,
GSTR-14-6, PI-43
MTStatus GSTR-14-8
MTVersion GSTR-14-7
multichannel sound output IIGS #19
multiple volumes Pascal #16
multiple-language programs
debugging PI-252-253
multiple-segment programming
examples PI-24 PI-1-245
multiplexer GSH-104
multiplexing CTR-251
RAM address CTR-252
multiplication, 32-bit GSF-42
Multiply GSTR-9-37
Munger routine (Miscellaneous Tool Set) PI-182, GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-45-47
mUpMask GSTR-7-11, GSTR-7-50
musGI Instrument Digital Interface
(MIDI) Pl-178
mvEscape GSTR-24-26
mvReturn GSTR-24-26
mXor GSTR-13-87
N
N command CTR-228
NABORT GSF-177, GSF-262
NAK character ETR-54
named devices. See device(s)
name(s). See device(s); pathname(s);
filenames; volume(s)
NaN GSTR-9-40, GSTR-9-41
National Television Standards
Committee See composite
(NTSC) video
native mode GSF-9, GSF-14, GSF-56,
GSH-28, GSH-198, GSH-201,
GSTR-13-14, GSTR-1-2, GSTR-1,
IIGS #2, PI-4, PI-9, PI-16-47,
PI-100. See also programming,
PI-4, PI-173, PI-271-272, PI-274,
PI-291
accumulator GSF-18
disassembler support GSTR-96
IOLC shadowing GSTR-85
memory addressing GSTR-18
mini-assembler support GSTR-96
operating system overview GSTR-95
program environments
summarized GSTR-89
register sizes GSTR-83
registers illustrated GSTR-14
stack location GSTR-84, GSF-13,
GSF-14, GSF-15
stack pointer GSTR-84
switching to GSTR-49
tool calls GSTR-88
NBREAK GSF-177, GSF-262
NCOP GSF-177, GSF-262
nD command CTR-156,CTR-170
NTD header section GSTR-5-19
NDA. See new desk accessory
negative decimal CTR-388-389
negative decimal values ETR-12
converting ETR-239-240
negative-decimal numbers GSH-248
Network Error ProDOS #21
network volumes
ProDOS #5, #16, #17, #21
New American Standard Keyboard
(Dvorak) GSTR-42
new desk accessories GSTR-68, GSTR-89, GSTR-5-1, PI-156, PI-263,
PI-289, PI-300. See also classic
desk accessory, desk accessories
programming examples Pl-265
supporting PI-157-158, PI-161
writing Pl-264-265
action codes GSTR-5-7
total number installed GSTR-5-17
New Video register GSH-14, GSH-84-85, GSF-87-88
newBarColor GSTR-13-70
NewControl GSTR-4-9, GSTR-4-24,
GSTR-4-70-73, GSTR-11-11,
GSTR-25-68
NewDItem GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-68-69,
PI-134, PI-143
NewHandle GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-35-37,
GSTR-15-19, IIGS #17, PI-41,
PI-43, PI-122, PI-192, PI-216,
PI-179
newInvertColor GSTR-13-70
newItemFailed GSTR-6-57, GSTR-6-69,
GSTR-6-90, GSTR-B-5
NEWLINE PI-211
NEWLINE call (S11) P1-6-137-140
NewList GSTR-11-19
NewMenu GSTR-13-8, GSTR-13-16,
GSTR-13-21, GSTR-13-67, PI-47,
PI-149
NewMenuBar GSTR-13-68
NewModalDialog GSTR-6-7, GSTR-6-23,
GSTR-6-70-71, PI-142, PI-143
NewModelessDialog GSTR-6-7,
GSTR-6-23, GSTR-6-72-73
newOut Color GSTR-13-70
NewRgn GSTR-16-40, GSTR-16-74,
GSTR-16-113, GSTR-16-153,
GSTR-16-181
newValue GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-37,
GSTR-4-86
NewWindow GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-16,
GSTR-25-21, GSTR-25-25,
Apple II
comparison of P16–281–288. See also specific operating system or specific topic
comparison of, calls. See system calls
comparison of, default at startup
P16–13
file compatibility P16–283–284
reading DOS 3.3 and Apple II
Pascal disks P16–284
filing calls P16–286–287
history of P16–281–282
input/output P16–285
interrupt support P16–288
memory management P16–287
similarity of P16–285–288
operating system
calls (typographic convention for) P1–xxii
disassembler calls GST–50
program environments summarized GST–113
reference manuals GST–111
standard I/O links GST–51–52
operating-environment tool sets Pi–22, Pl–180–183
operation codes GST 13
Option-Left Arrow GSTR–10–1, GSTR–10–29
Option-Right Arrow GSTR–10–1, GSTR–10–29
optionKey GSTR–7–9, GSTR–7–51
options GSF–304–305
OPTMOUSE GSF–209
orange320 GSTR–16–275
ORG segment header field P16–186. See also headers; segment(s)
organization (files)
block and tree P16–28
definition of P16–253
original mask GSTR–25–104
origin
of character Pi–93
of QuickDraw II coordinate plane Pi–77
of rectangle Pi–82
original Apple Ile See differences between original and enhanced
Apple Ile

Original Ilc Ilc #7
oscillator GSH–110, GSTR–25, PI–175–176
Control registers GSH–104–106
Data registers GSH–106
Enable register GSH–103
Interrupt register GSH–102
interruptions GSH–104, GSH–105
oscillator register GSTR–21–5
oscillator table GSTR–21–22, GSTR–21–23
oscillator-to-generator translation table GSTR–21–5
oscTable GSTR–21–36
oSecDisable GSTR–14–24, GSTR–14–67
oSecEnable GSTR–14–24, GSTR–14–67
OSEventAvail GSTR–7–42
OSShutdown IIGS #9, GSF #2
osVector GSTR–14–68
otherIntHnd GSTR–14–68
outline type style GSTR–16–258, GSTR–17–1, GSTR–17–3
outlineMask GSTR–16–276
outOfMemErr GSTR–14–56, GSTR–14–70, GSTR–B–2
OUTPORT GSF–252
output GSTR–23–46, See I/O
outputbuffer GST–37–38
output devices, definition of P16–42. See also device(s)
outputJack CTR–256
output link GST–52, GST–53
redirecting GSF–64
output parameter GSTR–2–6
output queue GST–38
output redirection IIGS #31
output routines GSF–76–78, GST–53
output sample rate GSTR–21–17
output subroutines CTR–64–70
C3Outl CTR–65–67
COutl CTR–64
COutl CTR–65
outputs
hand controller CTR–363–364
speaker CTR–82–84
strobe CTR–24
video display CTR–116–118
video signal CTR–270–273
OutStatus GSF–96, GSF–103
ovals (QuickDraw II) PI-87, PI-90
overflow bit CTR-44
overflow stack. See stack(s)
overheating ETR-158
overlays PI-16–205, PI-233

P

P register CTR-18, CTR-213, GSIR-35
P-machine Pascal #10
p1AddLine GSTR-14-64
p1Baud GSTR-14-64
p1Buffer GSTR-14-64
p1DCDHndShk GSTR-14-64
p1Delline GSTR-14-64
p1DStpBits GSTR-14-64
p1Echo GSTR-14-64
p1LnLnth GSTR-14-64
p1Parity GSTR-14-64
p1PrintModem GSTR-14-64
p1XnfHndShk GSTR-14-64
p2AddLine GSTR-14-64
p2Baud GSTR-14-64
p2Buffer GSTR-14-64
p2DCDHndShk GSTR-14-64
p2Delline GSTR-14-64
p2DStpBits GSTR-14-64
p2Echo GSTR-14-64
p2LnLnth GSTR-14-64
p2Parity GSTR-14-64
p2PrintModem GSTR-14-64
p2XnfHndShk GSTR-14-64
package9Err GSTR-14-56, GSTR-14-70, GSTR-B-1
packageBytes GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-39-41, GSTR-14-42, IIGS #27, PI-182
package GSH-127
paddle circuits Ile #6
paddle read Ile #6
paddles CTR-198, CTR-287
page GSTR-4-5
Page, high-resolution CTR-95
Page, text CTR-100
Page 1 CTR-20, CTR-36-38, CTR-50, CTR-269
double-high-resolution ETR-79
high-resolution CTR-95, ETR-23, ETR-27, ETR-79
text CTR-100, CTR-106, ETR-27, ETR-78
Page 1X CTR-38, CTR-269
Page 2 CTR-20, CTR-39
switch CTR-45, CTR-102, CTR-241, CTR-243, CTR-354
high-resolution ETR-23, ETR-79
text ETR-27, ETR-79
Page 2X CTR-38, CTR-39
page 3 vectors ETR-97
page flipping
Lo-Res graphics GSTR-GT
page range GSTR-15-8, GSTR-15-38
page rectangle GSTR-15-11
page region GSTR-25-62, GSTR-25-105
page settings, printing PI-167-168
page setup GSTR-15-1
Page Setup command (File menu) PI-32
page zero ETR-77, ETR-79-81
page size of P16-33, P16-291. See also memory
page-aligned (memory-block attribute) PI-187
page-aligned memory block GSTR-2-2, GSTR-12-12, GSTR-12-13
page-down region (scroll bar pan) PI-126
page-up region (scroll bar part) PI-126
PAGE2 Ile #3
PAGE2 soft switch ETR-29, ETR-32, ETR-87, ETR-89, ETR-90
pageDown GSTR-4-86
pages
display CTR-See display pages
memory CTR-See memory pages
reserved memory ETR-77-81
pageUp GSTR-4-86
pacing region GSTR-4-5, GSTR-4-8
Paint PI-52-53
Paint.PAS PI-439-442
PaintArc GSTR-16-188
painting GSTR-16-20, PI-87, PI-91
PaintBl PI-52-53, PI-104, PI-170
PaintOval GSTR-18-189, IIGS #34
PaintPixels GSTR-16-190-191
PaintPixels parameter block GSTR-16-191, GSTR-16-277
PaintPoly GSTR-16-192
PaintRect GSTR-16-193
PaintRgn GSTR-16-194
PaintRRect GSTR-16-195
PAL CTR-257
PAL device ETR-5, ETR-167-168
PAL timing chip Ile #2
See also color palette; color tables
standard in 320 mode GSTR-16-35, PI-100
standard in 640 mode GSTR-16-36, PI-102
palinal pathname PI-208
paper source GSTR-15-8
paperType GSTR-15-12, GSTR-15-13, GSTR-15-48
parallel interface Ile #7
Parallel Interface Card Ile #7
param1 GSTR-6-90
param2 GSTR-6-90
paramer blocks PI-16-10, PI-81-82, PI-16-88, PI-16-100-104
parameter lists (ProDOS 16) PI-214
parameter(s) PI-16-102-104
blocks. See parameter blocks
fields PI-16-105
format PI-16-102-103
length of pointers and handles PI-16-106
order of bytes in a field PI-16-103
order on stack PI-16-214
permissible range of values PI-16-103, PI-16-107
pointers and PI-16-102-103, PI-16-105
setting up in memory PI-16-103-104
System Loader PI-16-213
types of PI-16-102, PI-16-213
parameter
Battery RAM reference numbers
GSTR-14-12

1/3/89 X-Ref Index 47
definition GSTR-xGSTR-xix
DragRect GSTR-4-50-53
GetAddr reference numbers GSTR-14-20
input GSTR-2-6
length GSTR-xxx
NewControl GSTR-4-71-73
output GSTR-2-6
passing GSTR-2-6
pseudo-type GSTR-xxx
parameter-list pointer GSTR-50
parameter-passing PI-253 PI-225
paramLenErr GSTR-25-83, GSTR-25-144, GSTR-B-4
paramLength GSTR-25-84, GSTR-25-142
ParamText GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-75, PI-14 PI-1
parity GSF-89, GSTR-34, GSTR-35
parity bit CTR-163
parity for SSC ETR-279
part code GSTR-4-8, GSTR-4-57, GSTR-4-67, GSTR-4-81, GSTR-4-82, GSTR-4-83, GSTR-4-84, GSTR-6-67, PI-127
parts, standard window PI-110
Pascal 1.1 GSF-93
firmware protocol ETR-68-71, ETR-144, ETR-145-146, Ile #7, Miscellaneous #3, #8, Mouse #5, ProDOS #15, address locations GSTR-36, SmartPort calls GSTR-41, pascal declaration GSTR-102, Pascal device driver GSTR-23-3, Pascal Device Support Tools Pascal #10
Pascal Operating System CTR-329, ETR-234
Apple IIGS support GST-8, application program compatibility GST-39, compiler for GST-103, HodgePodge and PI-36, PI-413-446, I/O subroutines ETR-46, interrupt support GST-54, mouse and CTR-195, starting up with ETR-267-268, tool calls GST-63, video control functions CTR-117-118
PASCALIO Pascal #10
pen state record GSTR–16-238
PenNormal GSTR–16-196
PenState record GSTR–16-278
period () CTR–206, GSF–26, GSF–27, as Monitor command ETR–102
peripheral address bus ETR–192, ETR–194
peripheral cards GSH–5, GSH–178, GSH–28–29, GSTR–65
addressing GSH–179–180
compatibility on Apple IIGS GSTR–29
Control Panel GSTR–46
conventional positions GSTR–28
device assignment ETR–145
Disk II controller card GSTR–39–40
expansion ROM GSTR–31
I/O base addresses GSH–268
I/O memory space ETR–133, ETR–141
interrupt requests GST–55
main memory reserved locations GST–32
memory expansion card GSTR–18, GSTR–78
memory shadowing GST–80
peripheral device driver routines GSTR–30
programming for ETR–132–156
RAM memory locations GSH–268
RAM space ETR–136
ROM routines GSTR–33
ROM space ETR–133–135
peripheral data bus ETR–192
peripheral data bus, differences in Apple II family ETR–231
peripheral devices. See device(s)
peripheral expansion slots GSH–5
peripheral identification numbers
GSH–249–250
peripheral identification numbers (PIN) CTR–389–390
peripheral interface adapters GSH–171
peripheral slots See expansion slots
peripheral-card memory spaces
CTR–352–353
peripheral-card ROM GSTR–32
periwinkle Blue GSTR–16-274
permanent initialization files PI–266, PI–300
PI ProDOS #21
PIH Ile #4
PH1 Ile #4
PH2 Ile #4, IIGS #21
phone jacks ETR–8, ETR–39
phrase (Note Sequencer) PI–178
PIc Ile #7
PicComment GSTR–17-5, GSTR–17-15
picItem GSTR–6-10, GSTR–6-12, GSTR–6-88
picSave GSTR–16-134, GSTR–16-239, GSTR–16-277, GSTR–17-14
picScrap GSTR–20-4, GSTR–20-19
PICT data format IIGS #46
picture GSTR–16-9, GSTR–17-2-3
picture (QuickDraw II) PI–92
picture data format IIGS #46
picture definition GSTR–17-14
picture element. See pixel
picture file formats IIGS #27
picture files
HodgePodge and PI–215-217, PI–218
PInit GSF–209, GSF–210, GSTR–36, IIGS #16, CTR–116, ETR–69
pinning GSTR–9-3
pinouts
6551 CTR–277
GLU CTR–246
IOU CTR–243
IWM CTR–247
MMU CTR–242
RAM CTR–251
ROM CTR–249, CTR–250
TMG CTR–245
video expansion connector CTR–272
PinRect GSTR–25-89-90
pipelining ETR–161
pixel GSF–10
pixel GSTR–16-10-11, GSTR–16-135, GSTR–16-197, GSTR–16-200, GSTR–16-201
pixel, region GSTR–16-190
pixels GSH–81–82, GSH–89–90, GSH–93, GSTR–22, Ile #3, PI–77, PI–79
640 graphics mode GSTR–23–24
aspect ratios GSTR–61
background GSTR–16-28, GSTR–16-30, PI–93
chunky GSTR–16-31
defined PI–79, PI–7
foreground GSTR–16-27, GSTR–16-30, PI–93
relation to coordinate plane locations PI–78
shape of PI–77, PI–90, PI–284
place-holding character GSTR–5-8
plain-styled characters PI–95
plane GSTR–25-8
plane (window) PI–113, PI–136
PLOT1 GSF–225
plotter output port GSTR–34
plus sign (+) GSF–71, GSF–72
PMBootlnit GSTR–15-25
PMReset GSTR–15-28
PMStatus GSTR–15-28
PMVersion GSTR–15-27
pnStateSize GSTR–16-274
point (typesetting) PI–95
POINTER GSTR–xxx
pointer(s) PI6–26, PI6–38–39. See also EOF; Mark; memory handles, PI–189-190
definition of P16–102, P16–214
fields. See fields
length of (parameter fields) P16–106
master P16–38
order of bytes P16–256
parameter block P16–38–39, P16–82
pathname P16–61, P16–83
pointing device GSTR–7–21-25,
POKE CTR–329, Mouse #6, ETR–271–272
Poll Device command GSF–195
poling of devices GSTR–70
poling, Apple Desktop Bus GSTR–3-3
polyAlreadyOpen GSTR–16-186, GSTR–16-278, GSTR–B–3
polygon GSTR–16-24-25, GSTR–16-40, GSTR–16-72, GSTR–16-90, GSTR–16-96, GSTR–16-103,
printer interface cards GST-28
printer mode GSF-83
command character GSF-87
commands GSF-88-90
printer names dialog box GSTR-15-5
printer output port GSTR-34
printer paper GSTR-15-5
printer port GSF-300
commands CTR-156-157
printer status record GSTR-15-41
printer style subrecord GSTR-15-12-13
printers GST-46, P16-9, P16-43
printing IIGS #16, #35, #36,
  ImageWriter #1, PI-166-173
printing loop GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-34, loop PI-172
printing tools GST-69
printing
  background procedure PI-173
  choosing a printer PI-166-167
color GSTR-15-15-18
draft GSTR-15-14-15, GSTR-15-23,
  GSTR-15-37, draft PI-171
printing, errors PI-172
GrafPort PI-170
page settings, making PI-167-168
printing loop PI-172
QuickDraw II and PI-170, PI-172,
  PI-173
spool GSTR-15-14-15, GSTR-15-23,
  GSTR-15-37, GSTR-15-40, PI-172
private memory GSTR-12-11, GSTR-12-14
private scrap GSTR-20-5-6, PI-161
PJobDialog GSTR-15-20, GSTR-15-21,
  GSTR-15-22, GSTR-15-35,
  GSTR-15-46, PI-170
PRNTAX GSF-79, GSF-230, CTR-
  113,CTR-115, ETR-68, ETR-224
PRNTX GSF-231
PRNTXY GSF-230
PRO16MLI GSF-274
processor status register CTR-
  18,CTR-213, P16-64, P16-105
processor status
  changing GSF-61
  register GSF-37
system interrupt handler GSF-181
ProDOS CTR-51, CTR-57, CTR-
  124,CTR-155,CTR-169,CTR-
  204,CTR-214,CTR-312,CTR-
  328,CTR-332, ETR-105, ETR-
  141, ETR-233, GSF-43, GSF-70,
  GSF-110, GSF-114, GSF-115,
  GSF-130, GSH-143, GSH-235,
  GST-6, GSTR-5-, P16-xxi, P16-
  282.See also operating system(s);
  ProDOS 8; ProDOS 16
ProDOS 1.0 GST-94
ProDOS 16 GSF-117, GSF-220, GST-
  82, GST-90, GSTR-xGSTR-xvii,
  GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-18, GSTR-5-
  19, GSTR-12-1, GSTR-12-14,
  P16-xxi, P16-4-15.See also
  manuals; operating system(s) or
  specific topic, PI-xix, PI-10, PI-
  199, PI-200-202, PI-257-259, PI-
  260
ProDOS 16 EXerciser. See EXerciser
ProDOS 16
adding routines to P16-94-97
APW Shell GST-103
bypassing P16-6
cold-start routine GST-97
compared to Macintosh file system
  PI-287-288
compared to ProDOS 8 PI-291, PI-
  296, GST-94-95
description of P16-xxi, P16-4-15
direct-page/stack segment, default
  PI-206
effects P16-302-309.See also errors
  Exerciser PI-253-254
  external devices and P16-42-49
  fixed locations P16-65
  history of P16-283
  interface to P16-89
  interrupt handling PI-271-272
  introduction to P16-4-15
  memory and P16-xxviii, P16-32-40
  memory map PI-16-35
  new system calls P16-12
  operating system calls GST-50
  parameter lists PI-214
  prefixes PI-208-210
ProDOS 8 and. See ProDOS 8 and
  ProDOS 16
QUIT call PI-58, PI-202
shell applications and PI-262
summary of features P16-13-15
system calls. See system calls
System Loader GST-60
version number P16-171
ProDOS 8 GSF-117, GSF-220, GST-
  82, GST-90, P16-xxviii, P16-5,
  P16-9-13, P16-52, P16-60-61,
  P16-170.See also manuals;
  operating system(s), PI-xix, PI-
  9, PI-207, PI-257, PI-290
ProDOS 8 and ProDOS16 P16-9-10,
  P16-86-89, P16-105-106
  call methods compared P16-105-
  106
calls, converting P16-88
compilation/assembly P16-89
downward compatibility P16-11
eliminated ProDOS 8 system calls
  P16-11
hardware configuration P16-87
interrupt handlers, modifying P16-
  88
memory management P16-86
new ProDOS 16 system calls P16-11
revising applications P16-86-89
stack and zero page, converting
  P16-88
upward compatibility P16-10-11
ProDOS 8
/RAMI GSF-79
applications, memory banks for
  P16-33
binary files P16-12, P16-224, P16-
  283
cold-start routine GST-97
compared with ProDOS 16 GST-94-
  95
description of P16-xxi, P16-4
desk accessories GST-89
display shadowing GST-86
enhanced QUIT call P16-60-61
file system P16-283
filling calls P16-286
global page P16-10, P16-36, P16-
  79-80
global page PI-292, PI-296
history of P16-282
I/O P16-285
interrupt support P16-288
loading P16-166
memory and P16-34, P16-86-87
on an Apple IIIGS vs. other Apple II
computers P16-5
operating system calls GST-50
pathname of current application
  P16-69
prefix P16-68-69
ProDOS 16 compared to PI-291,
  PI-296
ProDOS 16 QUIT call and PI-202
QUIT type P16-60
standard QUIT call P16-60-61
system calls P16-9-11,105
system disk P16-56
system file P16-12, P16-58, P16-
  182, P16-224
system prefix PI-66-66, P16-68
system program P16-12, P16-58,
  P16-182, P16-224
unit (device) number P16-84
ProDOS busy flag. See busy flag
ProDOS devices Miscellaneous #8,
ProDOS #3, #21
ProDOS file system  Pl–xix, Pl–207–218
ProDOS Filing Interface  ProDOS #21
ProDOS is busy error.  See errors
ProDOS MLI  ProDOS #16, #20
ProDOS, calls to real-time clock  GST–26
interrupt support  ETR–148–149
interrupt support  GST–54
Machine Language Interface  CTR–125
starting up with ETR–268
use of page 3  ETR–78
use of page zero  ETR–81
proDOSVctr  GSTR–14–68
ProFile hard disk  ETR–xxii
system interrupt handler  GSF–181
See registers
program code execution, Monitor instructions  GST–48
program counter  GSF–51, GSH–203, CTR–18
program counter register.  See registers
65816 registers  GST–14
program descriptions (APW)  PI–221–224
program development environment
Apple Programmer’s Workshop
(APW)  GST–103–105
environment options  GST–82–88
environments summarized  GST–89–90
languages  GST–101–103
mixing environments  GST–88–89
modularity  GST–100–101
program launcher  PI–201
program operation levels  GSF–4
program register, changing  GSF–61
program segmentation  GST–62, GST–100
program selector  PI–201
Program Status register  GSH–201–203
program status, 65816 registers  GST–14
Programmed Array Logic (PAL) device  ETR–5, ETR–167–168
Programmer’s Workshop  See
Apple IIGS Programmer’s Workshop
programming  P16–xix, P16–74–91. See also specific topic
programming examples  See also
HodgePodge or specific routine assembly language  Pl–190, PI–193,
C  PI–190, PI–377–412
classic desk accessory  PI–263
dynamic-segment  PI–245
multiple-segment  PI–241–245
new desk accessory  PI–265
single-segment  PI–240–241
programming languages  GST–8–9,
GST–101–103
reference manuals  GST–110
absolute vs. relocatable segments
PI–24, PI–227
applications  PI–26, PI–228–229, PI–256–259
assembly language  PI–4, PI–280–284, PI–290
auxID field  PI–193
controlling programs  PI–129
control-related events  PI–129
cutting and pasting  PI–160–161
desk accessories  PI–262–265
desktop  PI–10
dialogs and alerts  PI–141
Edit menu  PI–161
error testing  PI–277
event handling  PI–70
event-driven  PI–13–16, PI–51
file types  PI–255–274
general  PI–xvii, PI–11, PI–277
high-level languages  PI–282–283,
PI–290
HodgePodge, using  PI–34–36, PI–276
hybrid applications  PI–292–293
initialization files  PI–266
interactive  PI–13, PI–14
interrupt handlers  PI–270, PI–271–272
language considerations  PI–225
load-segment characteristics  PI–232
loading programs  PI–199
loading segments  PI–198
Macintosh program conversions
PI–282–289
math computing  PI–178–180
memory allocation  PI–191–194
menu modification  PI–154–155
menu organization  PI–149
object module format and  PI–26
parameter-passing  PI–225
Print Manager  PI–171–173
restartability and C  PI–259
shell applications  PI–261–262
standard Apple II program enhancement  PI–290–297
static vs. dynamic segments  PI–25,
PI–232–235
System Loader  PI–195
TaskMaster and  PI–75
window origin, resetting  PI–120
window-related events  PI–113–120
programming
application requirements  P16–74
direct page and stack.  See direct
page and stack
event-driven  P16–xix
levels in Apple IIGS P16–3–7
segmented P16–xix
suggestions for P16–74–91
System Loader P16–203–210
system resource management P16–79–84
programs. See application(s); controlling programs; static programs
PROM, slot space  GST–30–31
PROMPT  GSF–247
prompt  GSF–74
prompt character
()  GSF–52, GSF–74
(*)  GSF–20, GSF–26, GSF–74
(>)  GST–74
(?)  GSF–74
(?)  GSF–74
prompt characters  CTR–59, ETR–60,
GST–53
mini-assembler ()  GST–50
Monitor (*)  GST–48
PrOpenDoc  GSTR–15–20, GSTR–15–21,
GSTR–15–22, GSTR–15–36–37,
GSTR–15–40, PI–170, PI–172
PrOpenPage  GSTR–15–20, GSTR–15–21,
GSTR–15–22, GSTR–15–38–39,
PI–170, PI–172
proportional scroll bars  GSTR–25–10
proportionally spaced font  GSTR–16–225
Protocol Converter  CTR–124, GST–40–41
PrPicFile  GSTR–15–20, GSTR–15–22,
PrPixelMap  GSTR–15–42
PrPortVer  GSTR–15–43
PrSetError  GSTR–15–21, GSTR–15–22,
GSTR–15–22, GSTR–15–44
prStd  GSTR–15–10, GSTR–15–12,
GSTR–15–47
Read Microcontroller Memory command GSF-191
Read Modes Byte command GSF-191
read next GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-33
Read RAM GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-31
Read Register GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-29
READ subroutine ETR-40, ETR-225
READ tape command ETR-113-114
read-only memory GSF-20
read/write Data register GSH-150
ReadAbs GSTR-3-16
readADBError GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-28
ReadASCITime GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-16
readAvailCharSet GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-28
readAvailLayout GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-28
READBLOCK UniDisk 3.5 #4, GSF-5, GSF-126
ReadBParam GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-13
ReadBRam GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-10
ReadChar GSTR-23-7, GSTR-23-29, GSTR-23-30, GSTR-23-40
readConfig GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-28
ReadConfigRec GSTR-3-29
ReadData GSF-146
ReadDir routine ProDOS #17
READDIS File #5
reading files PI-211-214
reading directory files P16-265-266
files, DOS 3.3 and Pascal P16-284
files P16-24, P16-272
ReadKeyMicroData GSTR-3-17
ReadKeyMicroMemory GSTR-3-18
ReadLine GSTR-23-30-31
readMicroMem GSTR-3-28
readModes GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-28
READMOUSE GSF-183, GSF-203, GSF-209, GSF-212
ReadMouse GSTR-14-34, IIC #1, Mouse #1, #3, CTR-188, CTR-192, CTR-193
readNext GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-36
readRAM GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-36
ReadRamBlock GSTR-21-24
readRegister GSTR-21-23, GSTR-21-36
ReadTime call (Miscellaneous Tool Set) PI-180
ReadTimeHex GSTR-14-4, GSTR-14-14
readVersionNum GSTR-3-17, GSTR-3-28
READ_BLOCK ProDOS #17, P16-42, P16-44, P16-284
description of P16-157-158
real font GSTR-8-7
real variable storage
Miscellaneous #9
real-time clock GSH-3, GSH-54,
GSH-77, GSH-159-160, GSTR-26,
GSTR-65
and peripheral cards GSTR-28
Apple IIGS Monitor instructions GSTR-49
Control Panel GSTR-47
interrupts GSTR-55
specifications GSTR-4
reallocation of memory GSTR-12-43,
GSTR-12-44
RealAllocHandle GSTR-12-15, GSTR-12-41
realOnlyBit GSTR-8-11, GSTR-8-50
rebooting IIGS #49
recCtl GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-39, GSTR-4-40
Receive Bytes command GSF-194
Recharge routine GSF-97, GSF-98,
GSTR-38, IIGS #16
records P16-187, P16-231, P16-297
cINTERSEG P16-187, P16-298
cRELOC P16-187, P16-297
DS P16-187, P16-297
END P16-298
LCONST P16-187, P16-297
RELOC P16-187-188, P16-297
SUPER P16-187, P16-298
recSize GSTR-4-25, GSTR-4-86
RECT GSTR-xxx, GSTR-16-22
rectangle GSTR-16-22-23, GSTR-16-40,
GSTR-16-86, GSF-6-91, GSF-6-91,
GSTR-16-97, GSTR-16-104, GSTR-16-162,
GSTR-16-167, GSTR-16-176, GSTR-16-182,
GSTR-16-184, GSTR-16-193, GSTR-16-203,
GSTR-16-204, GSTR-16-208,
GSTR-16-209, GSTR-16-247, GSTR-16-248,
GSTR-16-271, GSTR-25-80, GSTR-25-89,
GSTR-25-131, PI-87, PI-89
data structure PI-90
origin of PI-82
RecInRgn GSTR-16-203
RectRgn GSTR-16-204
recursive ProDOS #17
read320 GSTR-16-275
red640 GSTR-16-274
redirecting output IIGS #31
redMask GSTR-16-274
redraw routine GSTR-13-64-65
reduction GSTR-15-12, GSTR-15-13,
GSTR-15-48
reentrant code GSTR-70, GSTR-18-10,
GSTR-19-1, GSTR-19-3, PI-182
RefCon IIGS #38
reference manuals GSTR-106-111
reference number (ref_num). See file reference number
RefreshDesktop GSTR-25-91, GSTR-25-135, IIGS #4, PI-45
refreshing RAM GSTR-14
refreshing the display ETR-170-171
REGDSP GSF-235
region GSTR-16-25, GSTR-16-40,
GSTR-16-74, GSTR-16-75, GSTR-16-78,
GSTR-16-79, GSTR-16-84, GSTR-16-87,
GSTR-16-92, GSTR-16-98, GSTR-16-105,
GSTR-16-163, GSTR-16-168, GSTR-16-171,
GSTR-16-172, GSTR-16-177,
GSTR-16-181, GSTR-16-185,
GSTR-16-187, GSTR-16-194,
GSTR-16-203, GSTR-16-204,
GSTR-16-210, GSTR-16-218,
GSTR-16-223, GSTR-16-248,
GSTR-16-272, GSTR-16-273,
GSTR-25-81, GSTR-25-132, PI-87, PI-91
defined PI-112
register GSTR-2-7
register addresses, mouse GSF-200
register variables GSTR-102
register-display command GSF-22
register-modification commands GSF-38
registers CTR-18-19, ETR-146, ETR-161,
GSF-8, GSF-12-18, GSF-35-38,
GSTR-13-14, GSTR-48-49, GSTR-83,
P16-64, P16-224, PI-4, PI-66,
PI-283
A register ETR-146
accumulator ETR-138, ETR-148,
P16-77-78, P16-104, P16-209,
P16-213
changing CTR-213
command CTR-280
control CTR-278-279
data bank P16-104
direct P16-70, P16-77-79, P16-104
examining CTR-213, GSF-60
examining and changing ETR-110-111,
GSF-36-38
hardware P16-64
index ETR-138
initializing P16-81, P16-209
processor status P16-64, P16-105
program bank P16–104
program counter P16–104
restoring GSF–66
shift CTR–253,CTR–268
Smartport CTR–125
status CTR–18,CTR–130,CTR–213,CTR–281
transmit/receive CTR–282
values on entry and exit from call P16–104, P16–213
relation to QuickDraw II Pi–75, Pi–77, Pi–79, Pi–286–287
relative address calculation, mini-assembler GSTR–50
relative addressing ETR–121, ETR–126, ETR–137
RELOAD segments Pi–200, Pi–207, Pi–259
Reload segments. See segment(s) reloading applications. See application(s)
APW Liner GSTR–104
relocatable segments GSTR–100, GSTR–101
APW Assembler support GSTR–101
See segment(s)
APW Liner GSTR–104
relocation dictionary Pi–228
REMIN command CTR–169
REMOV command CTR–169
RemoveDilem GSTR–6–24, GSTR–6–76
RENAME call Pi–26–277
renaming files. See file(s)
repeat delay GSTR–7–3
repeat speed GSTR–7–3
Request to Send (RTS) CTR–280
requests. See calls; system calls
required tool sets Pi–62–63
RESERVED GSF–156
reserved memory GSTR–12–3
reserved memory pages ETR–77–81
reserved pages GSH–28
Reset CTR–3,CTR–4,CTR–81,CTR–358, ETR–11, ETR–14, ETR–228,
GSF–177, GSF–178, GSF–234,
IIGS #49, Memory Expansion Card #1
Reset command GSH–131
Reset Keyboard Microcontroller command GSTR–188
and bank switches ETR–83
differences in Apple II family ETR–230
Reset signal GSH–131
Reset the System command GSF–193
reset vector ETR–96–97, CTR–50–53
reset, interrupts GSTR–55
ResetAlertStage GSTR–6–76
ResetHook GSF–140
resetKbd GSTR–3–20, GSTR–3–28
ResetMark GSF–141
ResetMember GSTR–11–21
resetSys GSTR–3–20, GSTR–3–28
resident desk accessories GSTR–3, GSTR–46, GSTR–67, GSTR–89
resolution. See screen resolution
Resource Manager GSTR–60, GSTR–61
resources (Macintosh) Pi–285
ResetAll GSTR–5–21
Restart Pi–200, P16–201, P16–209
Restart call (System Loader)
description of P16–225–227
restart-from-memory flag P16–168, P16–202
restartability, C and Pi–259
restartable Pi–197, Pi–200, Pi–259
restarting programs in memory P16–199–200
restarting. See application(s)
RESETORE GSF–254
RestoreBuilds GSTR–16–58, GSTR–16–61, GSTR–16–205
RestoreHandle GSTR–12–15, GSTR–12–42
RestoreTextStyle GSTR–24–3, GSTR–24–16
RestScr GSTR–5–21
result, definition of P16–102, P16–213
resultID GSTR–8–10, GSTR–8–51
resultStats GSTR–8–10, GSTR–8–51
Resume command GSF–50, GSF–179
return address GSTR–33
return from subroutine (RTS) CTR–57, CTR–219, GSF–49, GSF–65,
GSTR–33
return from subroutine long (RTL) GSF–14
Return key GSTR–42, GSTR–4–14,
GSTR–6–5, GSTR–6–11, GSTR–6–25, GSTR–6–37
Return Monitor command ETR–127
retype CTR–63
retype function ETR–64
retype key GSF–75
revising ProDos 8 applications for ProDos 16 P16–86–89. See also application(s); ProDos 8 and ProDos 16; programming
Revision B motherboard ILE #5
RF modulator ETR–7
rfFamNum GSTR–16–142, GSTR–16–278
rfFamStyle GSTR–16–142, GSTR–16–278
rfFBExtent GSTR–16–142, GSTR–16–278
rfFontHandle GSTR–16–142, GSTR–16–278
rfNamePtr GSTR–16–142, GSTR–16–278
rfSize GSTR–16–142, GSTR–16–278
RGB CTR–269
RGB monitor GSTR–57, GSTR–59
RGB video GSTR–66, GSTR–19, PI–2, PI–7
colored text display GSTR–20
connector GSTR–6
specifications GSTR–3
Super Hi-Res graphics GSTR–21–24
Videc Graphics Controller (VGC) GSTR–76
RGB-type monitor ETR–185
rgnAlreadyOpen GSTR–16–187,
GSTR–16–278, GSTR–B–3
rgnFull GSTR–16–278, GSTR–B–3
RgnHandle IIGS #10
rgnNotOpen GSTR–16–74, GSTR–16–278, GSTR–B–3
rgnSave GSTR–16–140, GSTR–16–249
rgnScanOverflow GSTR–16–278,
GSTR–B–3
Right Arrow CTR–4,CTR–63,CTR–82,
ETR–64, GSTR–10–1, GSTR–10–29
right bracket (1) as prompt character
ETR–62
right scroll bar GSTR–25–6, PI–110, PI–111
rightFlag, GSTR-4-22, GSTR-4-72, GSTR-4-85
ringBuffOFlo, GSTR-23-16, GSTR-23-47, GSTR-B-4
rollover, N-key, ETR-10
ROM, CTR-13, PI-9, PI-18. See also memory
ROM (Apple IIe or IIc) P16-34
ROM (Apple IIgs) P16-32, P16-45-46. See also memory
expansion card P16-45-46
routines in P16-xix, P16-6
tool sets P16-33, P16-52-53
ROM (read-only memory) GSF-20
ROM 2.0 (IIgs) IGS #26
ROM disk GSF-17, GSF-110, GSF-114, GSF-117, GSF-234
driver GSF-152-155
passing parameters GSF-152-153
ROM for GSF-154-155
ROM expansion PI-5
ROM font GSTR-8-1, GSTR-8-19, GSTR-16-141
ROM font record GSTR-16-142, GSTR-16-278
ROM map
auxiliary side CTR-398
main side CTR-397
ROM memory. See memory
ROM space
expansion CTR-74
port CTR-73
ROM tool set GSTR-1-1, GSTR-2-3
ROM
addresses CTR-22-23, CTR-351-352
addressing CTR-249-250, ETR-168-169
Apple IIgs specifications GST-3
Applesoft ROM GST-4, GST-5
Autostart CTR-356
character generator CTR-14, CTR-266, CTR-267
expansion ETR-133-135, GST-15, GST-18
Fast Processor Interface (FPI) GST-75, GST-77
interpreter ETR-5
interrupt vectors GST-54
keyboard ETR-5
memory address (Apple II) GST-16
memory maps GST-78-80
Monitor CTR-356
Monitor listings ETR-307-347
Monitor program GST-4, GST-5, GST-48
peripheral-card CTR-352
RAM refresh and programs in ROM GST-14
resident desk accessories GST-46
slot ROM space GST-30-31
space for peripheral cards ETR-133-135
system ROM GST-54
toolsets in GST-63
Toolbox routines GST-58
tools resident in GST-7
video ETR-5
ROMEN1 CTR-250, ETR-168-169
ROMEN2 CTR-250, ETR-168-169
ROMLevel byte Miscellaneous #2
rounded result GST-9-3
rounded-corner rectangle GST-16-23, GST-16-93, GST-16-99, GST-16-106, GST-16-169, GST-16-195, PI-87, PI-90
routine number GST-D-1-9
routines (HodgePodge) PI-35, PI-59-60, PI-303-304. See also specific routine
routines (tool set) PI-17. See also specific routine
how to call PI-65-67
routine numbers PI-66, PI-274
routines
adding to ProDOS 16 P16-93-97
Apple IIgs Toolbox P16-9
file-copying P16-84
interrupt. See interrupt handlers
library P16-xv, P16-70, P16-80
names of, typographic convention for P16-xv
program selection (PQUIT) P16-59
ROM P16-xix, P16-6
total number of PI-62
routines. See also interrupt handlers;
libraries
row-address strobe (RAS) CTR-252
RS-232 device compatibility GST-33, GST-34
RS-422 driver GST-6, GST-33
RSHMEM ProDOS #9
RstVBl switch CTR-190
RstXInt switch CTR-189, CTR-242
RstXY switch CTR-189
RstYInt switch CTR-190, CTR-242
RT128: Pascal #10
RT48: Pascal #10
RT64: Pascal #10
RTBL GSF-235
RTBOOTLOAD.CODE Pascal #10
RTBSTDND.BOOTO Pascal #10
RTBSTRP.BOOTO Pascal #10

RTI: PI-269, ProDOS #12
RTL: IGS #1, PI-260, PI-261, PI-262, PI-265, GSF-14
RTS (Return from Subroutine) CTR-57, CTR-219, GSF-49, GSF-65, GST-33
RTS, Request to Send CTR-280
RTSETMODE.CODE Pascal #10
RTSTDND.APPLE Pascal #10
RTSTRP.APPLE Pascal #10
rtur-time libraries. See libraries
Run-Time Systems Pascal #10
runAction GST-5-7, GSTR-5-8, GSTR-5-30
running man Mouse #6

S
S command CTR-157, CTR-171
S register CTR-18, CTR-213, GSF-11, GSF-35, See registers
sample programs. See also
HodgePodge; programming examples
sample-and-hold circuit with DOC
GST-25
SANE (Standard Apple Numeric Environment) GST-59, GST-68, GST-111, IGS #7, #8, PI-xix-xx
See S
SANE direct page GST-18-6, GST-18-9
SANE Tool Set GSTR-xGSTR-xviii, GSTR-1-4, GSTR-1-14, GSTR-18-1-15
shutdowm routine GSTR-18-13
startup routine GSTR-18-12
status routine GSTR-18-14
using GSTR-18-3-6
version number routine GSTR-18-13
SANEBootInit GSTRR-18-11
SANEdecStrB16 GSTRR-18-2, GSTR-18-15
SANEems816 GSTRR-18-2, GSTR-18-15
SANEF-816 GSTRR-18-2, GSTR-18-15
SANEReset GSTR-18-14
SANEShutDown GSTR-18-3, GST-18-13
SANEStartUp GSTR-18-3, GST-18-12
SANEStatus GSTR-18-14
SANEVersion GSTR-18-13
sanFran GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
sapiing files P16-29, P16-262, P16-268, P16-270-271
SAVE GSF-254
Save As command (File menu) PI-32
Save command (File menu) PI-50

X-Ref Index 57
SaveAll GSTR–5–22
SaveBuDims GSTR–16–58, GSTR–16–61, GSTR–16–206
SaveBuDims record GSTR–16–206
SaveOne PI–164, PI–165, PI–213
SaveScr GSTR–5–22
SaveTextState record GSTR–24–18
saving files PI–164
scale fonts GSTR–25–25
clear fonts, defined PI–96
clearing, GSTR–8–7, GSTR–8–23, GSTR–8–44
scan line GSH–54, GSH–86
scan line interrupt GSTR–16–230, IIGS #99, GSR–180
scan line, control bytes GSH–86–88, PI–80, PI–100
scanLineInt GSTR–14–24, GSTR–14–66
SCB, see scan line control byte
scbColorMode GSTR–16–275
scbFill GSTR–16–275
scbInterrupt GSTR–16–275
scbReserved GSTR–16–275
SCC (Serial Communications Controller) GSTR–33, GSTR–39, IIGS #18
SCCareG IIGS #49
scclntFlag GSTR–14–66
scclntHnd GSTR–14–67
SchAddTask GSTR–19–3, GSTR–19–7
SchBootInit GSTR–19–4
shutdown routine GSTR–19–5
startup routine GSTR–19–4
status routine GSTR–19–6
using GSTR–19–2–5
version number routine GSTR–19–5
Scheduler queue GSTR–19–3, GSTR–19–7
Scheduler schematic diagram ETR–201–204
SchFlush GSTR–19–3, GSTR–19–8
SchReset GSTR–19–6
SchShutDown GSTR–19–2, GSTR–19–5
SchStartUp GSTR–19–2, GSTR–19–4
SchStatus GSTR–19–6
SchVersion GSTR–19–5
scLayoutOrLang GSTR–3–29
scLnDisable GSTR–14–26, GSTR–14–67
scLnEnable GSTR–14–26, GSTR–14–67
scroll count GSTR–20–5, GSTR–20–11
sc constants GSTR–20–19
error codes GSTR–20–19
shutdown routine GSTR–20–8
startup routine GSTR–20–7
status routine GSTR–20–9
using GSTR–20–4–6
version number routine GSTR–20–8
scroll LineEdit GSTR–20–5
private GSTR–20–5–6
See also desk scroll
ScrollView Init GSTR–20–7
ScrollView Reset GSTR–20–9
ScrollView ShutDown GSTR–20–4, GSTR–20–8, PI–58
ScrollView Startup GSTR–20–4, GSTR–20–7, PI–46
ScrollView Status GSTR–20–9
ScrollView Version GSTR–20–8
ScrollView Color register GSH–76
scroll dump, 80-column
Miscellaneous #1
Memory Expansion Card #1, Ilc #1, #6
auxiliary memory CTR–315
main memory CTR–313–314
mouse CTR–196–197
serial port 1 CTR–160–161
serial port 2 CTR–174–175
screen memory GSTR–16–71, PI–76, PI–79
screenReserved GSTR–16–64, GSTR–16–278, GSTR–B–3
screenTable GSTR–16–107
scRepeatDelay GSTR–3–29
SCROLL GSF–243
scroll bar. See also dialog scroll bar
bottom GSTR–25–6
clearing, GSTR–4–20–22
right GSTR–25–6
scrollBarItem GSTR–6–10, GSTR–6–12, GSTR–6–88
scrolling PI–73, PI–112, PI–117–120
scrolling in terminal emulation GSTR–37
scrollLineDown GSTR–6–15, GSTR–6–88
scrollLineUp GSTR–6–15, GSTR–6–88
scrollPageDown GSTR–6–15, GSTR–6–88
scrollPageUp GSTR–6–15, GSTR–6–88
scrollProc GSR–4–13, GSTR–4–21, GSTR–4–73, GSTR–4–85
scrollThumb GSTR–6–15, GSTR–6–88
SCSI (Small Computer System Interface) GSF–115
SCSI card SmartPort #5
SCSI interface card GST–6
SDivide GSTR–9–38
SEARCH command ETR–110
Search utility (APW) PI–224
SectRect GSTR–16–209
Section GSTR–16–210
Seek GSF–139, GSF–147
segLoader1Err GSTR–14–55, GSTR–14–70, GSTR–B–1
segLoader2Err GSTR–14–56, GSTR–14–70, GSTR–B–2
segment jump table GST–96
segment(s)
absolute P16–182–183, P16–186
alignment factor P16–299
bank-aligned P16–299

58 X-Ref Index 1/3/89
header fields P16–186, P16–299
initialization P16–184, P16–224, P16–227
Jump Table. See System Loader
libraries P16–70, P16–79
load numbers P16–298
locking P16–207
main P16–298
Memory Segment Table. See System Loader data tables
object P16–76
page-aligned P16–299
position-independent P16–183, P16–185, P16–186
run-time libraries P16–206
unloading P16–207
unlocked P16–207
absolute P1–24
direct-page/stack P1–204
dynamic P1–25, P1–195
maximum segment size P1–23
object P1–230–231
relocatable P1–24
static P1–25, P1–195
segmented programming P16–xix
debugging P1–249
segments IIGS #22
select signals GST–28, GST–29
selection mode GST–11–12
SelectIText GST–6–77–78
SelectMember GST–11–22
selectOnlyOne GST–11–25
Selector conventions ProDOS #14
self-booting applications P1–257–258, P1–257–258
self-test ETR–14, ETR–98
differences in Apple II family ETR–230
SelfText GST–6–24
Send ADB Keycode command GSF–193
Send command GSF–97
SendBehind GST–25–93
SendQueue GSF–97, GSF–98, GSF–103, IIGS #16
SendReset GSF–6
sequencer (Note Sequencer) PI–177
sequential-access devices. See device(s)
SerFlag IIGS #18
serial buffering CTR–343–344
Serial Card Miscellaneous #3
serial cards CTR–361–362
Serial Communications Controller (SCC) GST–33, GST–39, GSH–151, GSH–152–155
Command register GSH–152–153, GSH–266
data register GSH–152–153, GSH–266
interrupt flag GSTR–14–21
serial firmware IIGS #13, #18
serial I/O ports
Apple II family GST–5, GST–33–37
Apple IIGS GST–33, GST–37–39
I/O commands summarized GST–35–36
in Macintosh GST–6
specifications GST–4
serial I/O, buffers CTR–362
serial interface Ile #7
circuits CTR–275
connector signals CTR–278
connectors CTR–278
serial port-1 CTR–22, CTR–154–165
addresses CTR–323
at startup CTR–159
carry return and line feed CTR–164
characteristics CTR–154, CTR–161–165
data format and baud rate CTR–163
displaying output CTR–165
hardware page locations CTR–159
I/O firmware support CTR–160
screen holes CTR–160–161
sending special characters CTR–165
using CTR–155–158
addresses CTR–324
at startup CTR–173
carry return and line feed CTR–179
characteristics CTR–168–169, CTR–176–184
commands CTR–170–172
data format and baud rate CTR–177–178
hardware page locations CTR–173–174
I/O firmware support CTR–174
routing input and output CTR–179–184
screen holes CTR–174–175
using CTR–169–173
serial ports PI–2, PI–8, PI–9. See also I/O
serial ports, routines for P16–xix
serial-port firmware GSF–5, GSF–81–108
background printing GSF–97–98
buffering GSF–95–96
compatibility GSF–82
error handling GSF–95
extended interface GSF–99
handshaking GSF–84–85
interrupt notification GSF–96–97
operating commands GSF–86–92
operating modes GSF–83–93
programming GSF–92–94
serial-port interrupts GSF–180, GSF–183–184
SERVEMOUSE GSF–202, GSF–209, GSF–212
service request (ADB) GSH–139
Service Request signal GSH–132
Set Configuration Bytes command GSF–190
Set Modes command GSF–189
SetAbsClamp GSTR–7–27, GSTR–14–5, GSTR–14–37
SetAbsScale GST–3–15, GSTR–3–23
SetAddress GSF–143
SetAllSCBs GSTR–16–211
SetArcRot GSTR–16–212
SetTextStyle GSTR-16-56, GSTR-16-257-258, PI-143
SetTextStyleMode GSTR-16-55, GSTR-16-259-260
SetTextStyleSize GSTR-16-261
SetTextPtr GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-19, GSTR-A-6
SetTITXT GSTR-236
SetUpDefault PI-35, PI-41, PI-168
SetUpMenus PI-35, PI-36, PI-47, PI-158
SetUpWindows PI-35, PI-41, PI-123
SetUserField GSTR-16-262
SetUserSoundIQV GSTR-21-27
SETVBLCNTS GSF-209
SetVector GSTR-7-23, GSTR-14-5, GSTR-14-26, GSTR-14-53, GSTR-14-61-62, GSTR-14-63, IIGS #1, #18
SETVID GSF-252
SetVisHandle GSTR-16-263
SetVisRgn GSTR-16-264
SetWAP GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-20, GSTR-A-7, GSTR-A-8
SetWindow GSTR-25-108
SetWindowIcons GSTR-25-15, GSTR-25-109
SETWND GSF-236
SETWND2 GSF-237
SetWindowCon GSTR-25-28, GSTR-25-110
SetWindowTitle GSTR-25-111, PI-165
SetZoomRect GSTR-25-112
description of P16-149
SET_FILE INFO PI-214, P16-21, P16-86, 124, P16-260, P16-264, P16-277
description of P16-119-122
SET_LEVEL PI-211, P16-12, P16-25, P16-145
description of P16-151
SET_MARK PI-214, P16-23, P16-286
description of P16-147, P16-20, P16-66, P16-68, 165
description of P16-131-133
SPAllCaps P1-4 PI-5, GSTR-22-20
SPRootFile GSTR-22-20
SPGetFile GSTR-22-14, GSTR-22-21-24, PI-162, PI-163
SPGetFile GSTR-22-14, GSTR-22-25-26
SPPutFile GSTR-22-14, GSTR-22-27-29, GSTR-22-14, GSTR-22-30-31
SPPutFile PI-164, PI-165
SPReset GSTR-22-18
SFShutDown GSTR-22-13, GSTR-22-19, PI-58
SFSOpenUp GSTR-22-13, GSTR-22-16, GSTR-22-19, PI-45
SFSstatus GSTR-22-19
SVersion GSTR-22-18
Shadow register GSF-16, GSH-17-19, GSTR-85, P16-64
shadow type style GSTR-16-258, GSTR-17-1, GSTR-17-3
shadowed rectangle PI-148
shadowing GSF-308, GSF-310, GSH-13, GSH-16-21, GSH-45, P16-30-34, P16-64. See also memory
display GSTR-47, GSTR-78, GSTR-82, GSTR-86
I/O GSTR-29, GSTR-54, GSTR-78, GSTR-85, GSTR-90, GSTR-113
shadowMask GSTR-16-276
shape of pixels PI-77, PI-90, PI-284
Shaston PI-95, GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
shell PI-197
shell applications P16-208, PI-241, PI-256, PI-259, PI-261-262
shell identifier PI-261
shells P16-207, P16-222, P16-225. See also controlling programs
shiftCpsrCas GSTR-14-65
ShieldCursor IIGS #34
Shift CTR-5, CTR-81, CTR-255, CTR-358, ETR-11
Shift key GST-42
shift register CTR-263, CTR-268
Shift-Apple-Left Arrow GSTR-10-2, GSTR-10-29
Shift-Apple-Right Arrow GSTR-10-2, GSTR-10-29
Shift-key mod ETR-41-42
Shift-Left Arrow GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-29
Shift-Option-Left Arrow GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-2, GSTR-10-29
Shift-Option-Right Arrow GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-2, GSTR-10-29
Shift-Right Arrow GSTR-10-1, GSTR-10-29
shiftKey GSTR-7-9, GSTR-7-10, GSTR-7-51
Sholes keyboard CTR-6, CTR-358, CTR-367-368, #11c #4
short circuits ETR-160
SHORTGRAPHICS module Pascal #15
ShowControl GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-56, GSTR-4-80, GSTR-11-11
ShowCursor GSTR-16-264, PI-44
ShowDitem GSTR-6-24, GSTR-6-62, GSTR-6-81, GSTR-6-85
ShowFont PI-53, PI-97, PI-105, PI-170
ShowHide GSTR-25-113
ShowPen GSTR-16-265, GSTR-17-9, GSTR-17-14
ShowPleaseWait PI-46, PI-116, PI-134, PI-142
ShowWindow GSTR-25-99, GSTR-25-113, GSTR-25-114
shutdown routines
Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GSTR-3-11
Control Manager GSTR-4-43
Desk Manager GSTR-5-10
Dialog Manager GSTR-6-29
Event Manager GSTR-7-29
Font Manager GSTR-8-21
Integer Math Tool Set GSTR-9-6
LineEdit Tool Set GSTR-10-14
List Manager GSTR-11-14
Memory Manager GSTR-12-18
Menu Manager GSTR-13-31
Miscellaneous Tool Set GSTR-14-7
Print Manager GSTR-15-27
QuickDraw II GSTR-16-66
QuickDraw II Auxiliary GSTR-17-7
SANE Tool Set GSTR-18-13
Scheduler GSTR-19-5
Scrap Manager GSTR-20-8
Sound Tool Set GSTR-21-9
Standard File Operations Tool Set GSTR-22-17
Text Tool Set GSTR-23-11
Tool Locator GSTR-24-5
Window Manager GSTR-25-33
ShutDownTools PI-35, PI-58, PI-158
shutting down PI-197, PI-199-200
a tool set GSTR-2-4
HodgePodge PI-57, PI-58-59
See application(s)
SI character ETR-54
signals on expansion slots GSTR-28
signals, 6551 CTR-277
65CO2 CTR-305
65CO2 timing ETR-162-163
auxiliary slot ETR-197-200
BREAK CTR-165
caracter generator CTR-266
dock CTR-239-241
cisk drive connector CTR-274
eexpansion slot ETR-191-197
game I/O connector ETR-190-191
GLU CTR-246
hand controller CTR-199-200, CTR-289, CTR-364
hand controller connector CTR-287
IOU CTR-243-244, ETR-166-167
signature byte ETR-231
signature bytes UniDisk 3.5 #2
signature word GSTR-14-50
signedFlag GSTR-9-42
simpRound GSTR-4-85
simpDropSquare GSTR-4-85
simple button GSTR-4-14
control record GSTR-4-14-16
simpleButton GSTR-4-86
simpleProc GSTR-4-13, GSTR-4-15, GSTR-4-73, GSTR-4-85
simpRound GSTR-4-85
simpSquare GSTR-4-85
side GSTR-9-23
single mode GSTR-11-12
single-bit outputs on DIP socket GSTR-41
single-character output GSTR-52
single-segment, programming examples PI-240-241
single-wire Shift-key mod ETR-xxii
size GSTR-16-43
size box GSTR-4-4, GSTR-4-23, GSTR-4-65, GSTR-25-6, GSTR-25-10, GSTR-25-49, GSTR-25-75, PI-110, PI-111, PI-112, PI-114
control record GSTR-4-23-24
size of coordinate plane PI-77
slash (/) GSF-22, GSF-40
slashes, prefixes and P16-19
SLOOP GSF-234
slop rectangle GSTR-4-50, GSTR-25-46
slopRect GSTR-4-33-34, GSTR-4-88
slot 3 ETR-49-50, ETR-149-150, ProDOS #15
firmware ETR-69
in original Apple II ETR-144
slot 7, color subcarrier GSF-28
slot mapping ProDOS #3
slot number, finding ETR-137
slot numbers P16-7, P16-46. See also expansion slots
ProDOS #21
slot register GSF/OS #2, GSH-172-174
slot(s) GSF-28-33
allocation in Control Panel GSF-46
I/O space GSF-30
memory GSF-29-33
numbers GSF-30, GSF-32-33
ROM space GSF-30-31
signals GSF-28
slot, auxiliary ETR-49-50
SLOTC3ROM GSF-46
SLOTC3ROM soft switch ETR-50, ETR-143
SLOTC3ROM switch ETR-354
SLOTC3ROM soft switch ETR-143
SLOTCXROM switch ETR-354
Slotmaker chip GSF-12
slots GSF-304, GSH-5, GSI-25, P1-2, P1-6, P1-8-9, P1-166. See also I/O expansion ETR-7, ETR-132-144
expansion, signals GSF-191-197
for 80-column text display PI-8
for mouse PI-9
slots. See expansion slots
slow RAM GSF-78
slt1intExt GSF-14-65
slt2intExt GSF-14-65
slt3intExt GSF-14-65
slt4intExt GSF-14-65
Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) GSF-115
SmartPort GSF-110, GSH-143, P16-45-46, ProDOS #20, SmartPort #1
SmartPort bus GSF-133, GSF-157-165
SmartPort Bus architecture
SmartPort #3
packet contents GSF-164
packet format GSF-165
device-specific GSF-138
specific to Apple 3.5 disk drive GSF-138-141
specific to UniDisk 3.5 GSF-142-143
SmartPort calls GSF-121-137
SmartPort device types SmartPort #4
SmartPort devices Miscellaneous #8, ProDOS #21
SmartPort firmware GSF-5, GSF-17, GSF-113-165, GSF-40-41
SmartPort Interface SmartPort #3
SmartPort Interface Version SmartPort #2
SmartPort
assignment of unit numbers GSF-117-119, GSF-157-158
bank selector CTR-27
call parameters GSF-116
calls CTR-125-148
commands and parameters CTR-149
control flow GSF-159-165
Disk II interactions GSF-158
dispatch address GSF-115
display CTR-100-105
error codes CTR-150-151
error codes GSF-156
extended commands GSF-137
I/O interface CTR-123-124
issuing a call GSF-120-121
locating CTR-124
locating GSF-114-115
mouse CTR-189-191
read protocol GSF-161
slot for PI-9
soft switches CTR-20, CTR-24
standard commands GSF-136
write protocol GSF-162
smoothing GSF-15-7, GSTR-15-13, PI-167
sndAlreadyStrtErr GSF-21-8, GSTR-21-37, GSTR-B-3
sndIntInd GSF-14-68
SO character ETR-54
auxiliary memory ETR-87, ETR-89, GSF-40
bank switches ETR-82-86, ETR-88
differences in Apple II family ETR-230
display ETR-28-31, GSF-68-70
I/O memory ETR-142-143
implemented by IOU ETR-166-167
implemented by MMU ETR-164
initializing P16-64, P16-81
speaker ETR-39
SOFTEV GSF-259
Software Licensing PI-279
compatibility P16-4, P16-10-11. See also ProDOS 8 and ProDOS 16
requirements P16–xviii–xix
standard Apple II P16–34
software. See also operating
system(s); RAM disks; system
disks; system software
Solid Apple (●) CTR–4, CTR–52, CTR–
81, CTR–200, CTR–221, CTR–
222, CTR–358, ETR–11, ETR–13,
ETR–228
Solid Apple-Control-X CTR–341
SolidPattern GSTR–16–265
SortList GSTR–11–8, GSTR–11–11
SOS operating system PI–215–217
file system P16–278, P16–284, P16–
287
filing calls P16–286
history of P16–282
I/O P16–285
interrupt support P16–288
memory management P16–287
sound GSF–303, GSH–96, GSH–110–
113, IIGS #57
Sound Control register GSH–98–99,
GSH–100, GSH–101
sound expansion connector IIGS #9
Sound General Logic Unit (Sound
GLU) GSTR–12, GSTR–25, GSTR–
21–4, GSH–98–101, GSH–101,
GLU PI–8, PI–175, GLU, registers
GSH–264
sound hardware GSTR–21–1, GSTR–
21–3–5
sound impedance IIGS #9
sound interrupt handler GST–69,
GSTR–21–25
Sound Manager GST–62, GST–69
sound oscillator IIGS #11
sound procedure GSTR–6–22, GSTR–
6–47
sound RAM IIGS #23
sound subsystems GSTR–21–3
sound synthesizer GSH–7
Sound Tool Set GSTR–1–4, GSTR–1–
15, GSTR–21–1–37, IIGS #11, PI–
22, PI–176
constants GSTR–21–36–37
data structures GSTR–21–37
error codes GSTR–21–37
shutdown routine GSTR–21–9
startup routine GSTR–21–8
status routine GSTR–21–10
using GSTR–21–6
version number routine GSTR–21–9
sound tools GST–24, GST–60, GST–62
Sound Tools IIGS #37
sound waveforms GST–24
sound
address calculation GSH–111

data register GSH–99, GSH–100,
GSH–101
stereo GSH–113
sound/sound hardware PI–2, PI–8,
See also Note Synthesizer
SoundBootInit GSTR–21–7
SoundReset GSTR–21–10
SoundShutDown GSTR–21–6, GSTR–
21–9
SoundStartUp GSTR–21–6, GSTR–21–8
SoundToolStatus GSTR–21–10
SoundVersion GSTR–21–9
source files P16–75. See also file(s),
PI–26, PI–226–229
assigning load segments in PI–234–
236
sPackage0Err GSTR–14–55, GSTR–14–
70, GSTR–B–1
sparse files. See file(s)
SPC command ETR–xxi
speaker CTR–359, ETR–4, ETR–38–39,
ETR–189, GSH–97, GSH–101,
GST–25
circuit diagram CTR–256
connector ETR–189
outputs CTR–82–84
soft switch ETR–39
volume control CTR–8, CTR–256
special character, menu GSTR–13–14–
15
special characters CTR–393
special function keys CTR–4
special memory GSTR–12–3, GSTR–
12–12, GSTR–12–13
PI–187
special memory. See memory
specialized tool sets PI–22
specification
connector GSTR–xxvi
language GSTR–xxvii
mechanical GSTR–xxvi
65C02 CTR–239
specifications
environmental CTR–232
environmental ETR–158
power supply CTR–233, CTR–383
Speed register GSF–16, GSH–20–21
spExtra GSTR–16–30, GSTR–16–51,
GSTR–16–55, GSTR–16–58, GSTR–
16–59, GSTR–16–60, GSTR–16–
144, GSTR–16–253
spool printing GSTR–15–14–15, GSTR–
15–20, GSTR–15–23, GSTR–15–30,
GSTR–15–37, GSTR–15–38, GSTR–
15–4, PI–172
square root GSTR–9–24
SRQ GSF–180
SRQ list GSTR–3–3, GSTR–3–5, GSTR–
3–7, GSTR–3–9, GSTR–3–15,
GSTR–3–25, GSTR–3–26, GSTR–7–
24
srlListFull GSTR–3–25, GSTR–3–29,
GSTR–B–4
SRQPoll GSTR–3–25
SRQRemove GSTR–3–26, GSTR–7–25
SSC (Apple Super Serial Card) GSF–
82, Ile #7, Miscellaneous #3
SSC interrupts II GS #18
stack GSF–15, GSF–29, GSF–44,
GSH–201, GST–13, GST–82, GST–
84, GSF–89, GST–2–5, GST–5–
4, PI–4, PI–203, PI–269, PI–284,
PI–293, PI–296
stack diagram GSTR–xGSTR–xix
pseudo-type GSTR–xxx
stack overflow PI–207
stack page GSH–38
stack pointer CTR–18, CTR–213, GSF–
13–15, GSF–35, GSH–201, GST–
14, GST–84, PI–203, PI–262, PI–
269, PI–294
changing GSF–61, ETR–78, ETR–153
stack underflow PI–207
stack(s)
diagram format (System Loader
calls) P16–214
hardware P16–75
locations, converting ProDOS 8 to
ProDOS 16 P16–88
overflow PI–77
104
quit return stack P16–167
See also direct page and stack
stack
65C02 ETR–78
auxiliary ETR–153–154
main ETR–153–154
overflow GSH–29
stage byte GSTR–6–21, GSTR–6–33
standard Apple II PI–4, PI–10, PI–203,
PI–290, See Apple II family
compatibility of Apple IIgs with PI–
9–10, PI–291–292
defined PI–xxi
program enhancement PI–290–297
See Apple II, standard
Standard Apple Numeric
Environment (SANE) PI–xix–xx,
GST–59, GSH–68, GST–111
Standard Apple Numeric
Environment Tool Set PI–22, PI–
179–180
Standard Apple Numeric
Environment. See SANE

1/3/89
standard color palette
320 mode GSTR-16-35
640 mode GSTR-16-36
standard color table GSTR-16-159
standard control type value GSTR-4-73

Standard File IIGS #14
standard file formats GSTR-100
Standard File Operations Tool Set
GST-71, GSTR-1-4, GSTR-1-15,
GSTR-22-1-32, PI-21, PI-64, PI-162-165, PI-288, PI-289

constants GSTR-22-32
data structures GSTR-22-32
shutdown routine GSTR-22-17
startup routine GSTR-22-16
status routine GSTR-21-19
using GSTR-22-13-14
version number routine GSTR-21-18

standard files P16-26-27, P16-270, see also file(s)
format and organization of P16-267
reading P16-272
standard filter procedure GSTR-6-25
standard GrafPort GSTR-16-187
standard I/O links ETR-51, GST-51-52
address storage ETR-78
changing ETR-140-141
standard I/O, see input/output
standard linker (APW) PL-223, PL-235, PL-238
standard menu edit GSTR-5-27
standard pen state GSTR-16-196
standard QUIT call (ProDOS 8) P16-60-61
standard SCB GSTR-16-145
standard window control GSTR-25-6-7
standard window parts PI-110
standardMenu GST-13-72, GST-13-87

START P1-257, P1-258
start bit GSH-128
START file P16-58, P16-61-62
StartDrawing GSTR-10-11, GSTR-25-31, GSTR-25-116
StartInfoDrawing GSTR-25-47, GSTR-25-117, IIGS #3
Starting Interpreter conventions
ProDOS #7
starting up ETR-267-268
starting up a tool set GSTR-2-4
starting up
HodgePodge PL-38-47, PL-64

STARTTIME GSF-209
startup CTR-121-123
startup drives ETR-xx-xxi
startup file GST-95
startup order, tool set GSTR-C-6
startup routines
Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GSTR-3-10
Control Manager GST-4-42
Desk Manager GST-5-9
Dialog Manager GST-6-28
Event Manager GST-7-27-28
Font Manager GST-8-19-20
Integer Math Tool Set GSTR-9-5
LineEdit Tool Set GST-10-13
List Manager GSTR-11-13
Memory Manager GSTR-12-17
Menu Manager GST-13-30
Miscellaneous Tool Set GST-14-6
Print Manager GST-15-26
QuickDraw II GST-16-64-65
QuickDraw II Auxiliary GST-17-6
SANE Tool Set GSTR-18-12
Scheduler GSTR-19-4
Scrap Manager GST-20-7
Sound Tool Set GST-21-8
Standard File Operations Tool Set
GSTR-22-16
Text Tool Set GST-23-11
Tool Locator GST-24-4
Window Manager GSTR-25-32
startup slot, Control Panel GST-47
startup, see application(s); system startup
startupAlreadyMade GST-15-49,
GSTR-B-5
startupSlt GSTR-14-65
StartupTools PI-35, PI-36, PI-42, PI-158, PI-188
statcode ProDOS #21
state record GST-24-18
state register GSH-35-36
static IIGS #11

static programs P16-77, P16-204, see also System Loader, GST-96,
static segments
APW Linker GST-104
See segment(s)
static text PI-140, PI-141
staticText GST-6-10, GST-6-12,
GST-6-17, GST-6-24, GST-6-88
STATUS ProDOS #20,
SmartPort #2, #4, #5, #7,
UniDisk 3.5 #2, #3, #4, CTR-126, CTR-128-132, GST-121-125
status code error GSF-122
status list SmartPort #2
status record, printer GST-15-41
status register GSF-56, GSH-126-127,
GSH-148-149, PI-16-105
ACIA CTR-130, CTR-281
storage devices, see device(s)
startup routines
Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GST-3-12
Control Manager GST-4-44
Desk Manager GST-5-11
Dialog Manager GST-6-30
Event Manager GST-7-30
Font Manager GST-8-22
Integer Math Tool Set GSTR-9-7
LineEdit Tool Set GST-10-15
List Manager GST-11-15
Memory Manager GST-12-20
Menu Manager GST-13-32
Miscellaneous Tool Set GST-14-8
Print Manager GST-15-28
QuickDraw II GST-16-67
QuickDraw II Auxiliary GST-17-8
SANE Tool Set GST-18-14
Scheduler GST-19-6
Scrap Manager GST-20-9
Sound Tool Set GST-21-10
Standard File Operations Tool Set
GSTR-21-19
Text Tool Set GST-23-14
Tool Locator GST-24-6
Window Manager GSTR-25-34
StatusID GST-14-60
StatusTextDev GST-23-39
stdArc IIGS #34
StdOval IIGS #34
StdRect IIGS #34
stdRect IIGS #34
STEP command CTR-221-223, GST-50, GSF-66
step mode (Note Sequencer) PI-178
STEPVECTOR GSF-271, GSTR-14-68
stereo expansion cards IIGS #19
stereo sound GSH-113
StillDown GST-7-47
stkOvFlwErr GST-14-55, GST-14-70, GSTR-B-2
Stop alert GST-6-6
stop bit GSH-128
stop bits GST-34, GST-35
stop icon GST-6-86
stop-list feature ETR-55
stop-list function CTR-67
stop-sound mask GST-21-18-19
StopAert GST-6-24, GST-6-86, PI-135, PI-309
stopping mini-assembler GST-50
display memory GST-87
linear mapping GST-87
QuickDraw II GST-60-61, GST-64-65
reference manual GST-110
shadowing GST-86-88
specifications GST-3
Video Graphics Controller (VGC) GST-12, GST-76
Super Hi-Res
320 mode PI-7, Pl-99, PI-101
640 mode PI-7, Pl-99, PI-102
available colors PI-7, PI-98
color palettes PI-7
SUPER records P16-187, P16-298
Super Serial Card CTR-179, CTR-361, CTR-362, ETR-276-291,
GST-35, GST-39, Ile #7,
Miscellaneous #3
Super Serial Card
command character ETR-278
commands ETR-278-285
error codes ETR-285-286
memory use ETR-287-290
scratchpad RAM ETR-290-291
terminal mode ETR-286-287
Sw0 CTR-287, Ile #9
Sw1 CTR-287, Ile #9
Sw2 Ile #9
swap mode GST-21-5
swap pair GST-21-5
swap-mode IIGS #11
switch 0 ETR-41, ETR-43
switch 1 ETR-41, ETR-43
switch event GST-27-4, GST-7-5,
GST-7-14, GST-7-46, Pl-68,
Pl-69, Pl-73
switch input Ile #9
switch inputs CTR-200, ETR-41-42,
ETR-43
switch inputs (SW0 through SW3)
GST-157
switches P16-207, P16-222, P16-225
switches See soft switches
switchEvnt GST-7-7, GST-7-50, PI-69
switching execution PI-199
switchMask GST-7-11, GST-7-50
symbol GST-8-4, GST-8-51
symbol table GST-291, GST-292
mini-assembler GST-50
symbolic reference PI-226, PI-238
SYN character ETR-54
Sync command GST-191
Sync slot signal GST-28
synch GST-3-20, GST-3-28
synchLayoutOrLang GST-3-29
syncMode GST-3-29
SynchRec GST-3-29
synchRepeatDelay GST-3-29
synchronization of clock timing GST-77
synchronization signals CTR-257
synthesizer interrupt handler GST-21-27
synthesizer. See Note Synthesizer;
sound/sound hardware
synthesizers GST-24
synthModeErr GST-21-15, GST-21-37, GST-B-3
SysBeep GST-14-5, GST-14-53
SysBeep routine (Miscellaneous Tool Set) PI-182
SYSDMGRV GST-265
SysFailMgr GST-14-5, GST-14-54-56,
GST-23-8, GST-14-67,
GST-23-8, IIGS #33, PI-307
sysField GST-16-146, GST-16-255,
GST-16-277
sysSpeed GST-14-65
sysStrtMterr GST-B-2
/ SYSTEM.DISK GS/ OS #1
/ SYSTEM.TOOLS GS/OS #1
system calls P16-xix, P16-9-13, P16-94, P16-98-177. See also calls or
specific call
system calls
call block P16-100
converting ProDOS 8 to ProDOS 16
P16-88
definition of P16-100
description format P16-106-107
device calls P16-154-162
environment calls P16-164-171
Exerciser disk and P16-290
file access calls P16-136-152
file housekeeping calls P16-110-134
filing calls. See file access calls; file
housekeeping calls
interrupt control calls P16-174-177
interrupt handlers and P16-96
parameter blocks P16-100-103. See also parameter(s)
practicing with Exerciser P16-290
ProDOS 16 (new) P16-12
ProDOS 8 P16-11, P16-105
ProDOS operating systems GST-95
register values on entry and exit
from P16-104
system call reference P16-98-177
system clock Pl-9
system configuration GST-14-11
system direct page GST-5-4
SYSTEM directory GST-2-3, GST-5-3, GST-5-6, GST-8-1, GST-8-15,

1/3/89 X-Ref Index 65
Jump-Table-Loaded flag P16–201, P16–235
modification at load time P16–196
segment entry P16–194–197, P16–237
segments P16–201, P16–298, P16–193–195.See also segment(s)
use during execution P16–196–197
Mark List P16–201–202
Memory Segment Table P16–192–193.See also segment(s)
Pathname Table P16–199–201
System Loader
calls. See System Loader calls or specific call
controlling program design and
P16–207–209.See also controlling programs
data tables. See System Loader data tables
description of P16–70, P16–182–183
dormant state P16–62, P16–168,
dynamic segments and P16–204–
205.See also segment(s)
entry point P16–35, P16–300
errors P16–310–311
functions (categorized by caller)
P16–210
global variables P16–300
interface with Memory Manager
P16–184–187
introduction to P16–70, P16–182–189
load-file structure P16–187
loading applications P1–198
loading relocatable segments P16–
187–189
loading relocatable segments P16–
197
memory map of P16–34–35
memory requirements of P16–xviii
parameters P16–213–214
program development GST–100–
101
program relocation GST–62
programming with P16–203–210
reference for P16–xix
relocation P16–188–189
restarting and shutting down
applications P16–209–210
run-time libraries and P16–205–206
segment loading, user control of
P16–206–207.See also segment(s)
static programs and P16–204
technical data P16–295–301
terminology P16–183–184
types of load segments P1–196
version number P16–218–219
system menu bar GST–13-4–5,
GSTR–13-30, GSTR–13-55, GSTR–
13-63, GSTR–13-66, GSTR–13-68,
GSTR–13-71, GSTR–13-86, PI–147
System Monitor See Monitor, System
40-column mode GSF–25
80-column mode GSF–25-26
command syntax GSF–21
command types GSF–21-24
creating commands GSF–47
filling memory GSF–45
firmware GSF–4, GSF–19-67
invoking GSF–20
memory commands GSF–25-34
miscellaneous commands GSF–39–
43
multiple commands GSF–44
repeating commands GSF–46
system prefix (ProDOS 8) P16–66,
P16–68–69
system program (ProDOS 8) P16–12,
257
system resources, managing P16–79–
84
system ROM GST–78
system software GSF–38, P16–70–
72.See also system disks; software
memory banks and P16–33
User ID and P16–71
system speaker GST–14-5
system startup P16–55–59, P16–210
boo: initialization P16–52, P16–56–
57
default operating system P16–13
device search P16–45–46
introduction to P16–55–59
Loader initialization P16–215
program selection P16–58–59
rebooting P16–49
system tool GST–A–1
system volume GST–21-26
system window GSF–5-26, GSTR–25-
8, GSTR–25-66, GSTR–25-70,
GSTR–25-107
task codes P1–48, P1–70, PI–74
taskData field P1–54, PI–153
system windows PI–111
SYSTEM.ATTACH Pascal #10, #16
SYSTEM.CHARSET Pascal #10
SYSTEM.LIBRARY Pascal #10, #15
SYSTEM.MISCINFO Pascal #10
SYSTEM.PASCAL Pascal #10
SYSTEM.SETUP/ subdirectory PI–300
SYSTEM.STARTUP Pascal #10
tool sets
advantages of using PI-18
basic PI-20
categories of PI-19-22
defined PI-17
desktop-interface PI-20-21
device-interface PI-21
direct-page space for PI-42
function numbers PI-66, PI-274
independence from operating
system PI-18
loading PI-63
math PI-22
number of PI-62
numbers PI-66, PI-273
operating-environment PI-22
programming techniques PI-18, PI-
62, PI-272-274
RAM patches PI-43, PI-293
RAM-based PI-43, PI-63
required PI-62-63
sound PI-22
specialized PI-22
starting up PI-38-41, PI-42-46, PI-
62-67
user-written PI-272-274
version number PI-63
where stored on disk PI-63
tool starting order IIGS #12
tool table GSTR-2-3, GSTR-24-11,
GSTR-24-12, PI-42, PI-63
TOOL SETUP PI-300
TOOL SETUP file PI-16-53, PI-16-56
Toolbox GSH-233, GST-7, GST-58-
71
Toolbox Event Manager (Macintosh)
GST-59, GST-65
toolbox routines GSF-43
Toolbox
application programming GST-94
calls GST-58, GST-63
creating a tool set GST-58
Interface Library GST-102
Macintosh Toolbox comparison
GST-6, GST-59-62
mixing program environments
GST-88-89
programming suggestions GST-62
reference manual GST-109-110
specifications GST-3
tool sets GST-63-71
toolbox-defined constants PI-38, PI-
50
toolbox-defined data structures PI-38
toolERR GSTR-2-6
toolLoc1 GSTR-14-67
toolLoc2 GSTR-14-67
toolNotFoundErr GSTR-24-7, GSTR-
24-8, GSTR-24-9, GSTR-24-10,
GSTR-24-11, GSTR-24-19, GSTR-
24-20, GSTR-24-25, GSTR-24-26,
GSTR-B-2
tools P16-xix, P16-70-72, P16-
182.See also RAM-based tools;
ROM-based tools or specific tool
TOOLS subdirectory GSTR-2-3,
GSTR-24-3, GSTR-24-10, GSTR-
24-11
toolVersionErr GSTR-24-10, GSTR-
24-11, GSTR-24-26, GSTR-B-2
topMost GSTR-25-139
TOPPRINTMSG16 GSF-274
TOPPRINTMSG8 GSF-273
TOREADBR GSF-272
TOREADTIME GSF-273
toronto GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
TOSUB GSF-247
TotalMem GSTR-12-46
TOTEXTPT2DA GSF-274
TOTWRITEBR GSF-272
TOTWRITEETIME GSF-272
TPT (tool pointer table) GSTR-24-19,
GSTR-A-2
TRACE command CTR-221-223
Trace command GSF-50, GSF-66
TRACEVECTOR GSF-271
traceVector GSTR-14-68
trackball GSTR-7-21
TrackControl GSTR-4-10, GSTR-4-82-
84, GSTR-25-126, PI-71, PI-129
TrackGoAway GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-
125, GSTR-25-127-128, IIGS #42,
PI-114, PI-115
tracking PI-155
tracks P16-43, P16-254, P16-282,
P16-284
TrackZoom GSTR-25-11, GSTR-25-
12, GSTR-25-125, GSTR-25-129-
130, PI-114
transactions GSH-127, GSH-128-129
transferring
data to and from files P16-21
sparse files P16-30
translation PI-277
Transmit num Bytes command GSF-
194
Transmit Two Bytes command GSF-
195
transmit/receive register, ACIA CTR-
282
transmit2ADDBytes GSTR-3-21,
GSTR-3-28
transmitADDBytes GSTR-3-21,
GSTR-3-28
transparent GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-67
transparent mode CTR-187
transparentVI GSTR-14-36, GSTR-14-
67
Trap Dispatcher (Macintosh) GSTR-60
tree files P16-28, P16-29, P16-262,
P16-271-272
growing P16-267-269
TREESearch routine Pascal #14
trigger value PI-251
tkey Ilc #6
Trs Ilc #4
TRSCODE Pascal #14
tser Ilc #6
Trwh Ilc #4
TTL RGB GSTR-19
TXTLEGRAPHICS unit Pascal #15
twkey Ilc #6
twser Ilc #6
txFace GSTR-16-56
txSz: GSTR-16-150, GSTR-16-261,
GSTR-16-277
txDspLang GSTR-14-65
type-ahead keyboard buffer GST-42
TypeId. See User ID
typelD PI-192
types PI-36
typned Ilc #6

U
UCSD Pascal GST-90, GST-94
display shadowing GST-86
memory expansion GST-17
UDISPatch1 GSF-264
UDISPatch2 GSF-264
UDivide GSTR-9-39
unclaimed interrupts. See interrupt(s)
unclaimedSndlnErr GSTR-21-37
unCnctDevErr GSTR-14-34, GSTR-
14-70, GSTR-B-2
unDefHW GSTR-23-15, GSTR-23-47,
GSTR-B-4
underlined menu item GSTR-13-15-
16, GSTR-13-77
underlineMask GSTR-16-276
underlining PI-96
underMItem GSTR-13-78, GSTR-13-
87
underscore ( ) GSF-41, GSF-67,
GSF-83
blinking CTR-179
underscore character GSTR-2-5
undo GSTR-5-30
Undo command (Edit menu) PI-32,
PI-277
undoAction GSTR-5-7, GSTR-5-30
unhighlighting PI-72, PI-153
UniDisk GSH-143
reset CTR-50-53
reset ETR-96-97
See interrupt vector table
venice GSTR-8-4, GSTR-8-51
VERIFY subroutine ETR-226
VERSION GSF-238, GSTR-16-42, GSTR-16-43
version information GSTR-A-3
version number GSTR-A-8
version number routines
Apple Desktop Bus Tool Set GSTR-3-11
Control Manager GSTR-4-43
Desk Manager GSTR-5-10
Dialog Manager GSTR-6-29
Event Manager GSTR-7-29
Font Manager GSTR-8-21
Integer Math Tool Set GSTR-9-6
LineEdit Tool Set GSTR-10-14
List Manager GSTR-11-14
Memory Manager GSTR-12-19
Menu Manager GSTR-13-31
Miscellaneous Tool Set GSTR-14-7
Print Manager GSTR-15-27
QuickDraw II GSTR-16-66
QuickDraw II Auxiliary GSTR-17-7
SANE Tool Set GSTR-18-13
Scheduler GSTR-19-5
Scrap Manager GSTR-20-8
Sound Tool Set GSTR-21-9
Standard File Operations Tool Set GSTR-22-18
Text Tool Set GSTR-23-12
Tool Locator GSTR-24-5
Window Manager GSTR-25-33
version number
font definition GSTR-16-42, GSTR-16-43
minimum GSTR-24-10, GSTR-24-11
file system P16-258, P16-260, P16-265, P16-305
object module format P16-230
ProDOS 16 P16-xxii, P16-171
System Loader P16-218-219
versions P1-301
of HodgePodge P1-35
of tool sets P1-63
vertical blanking CTR-338,CTR-354,CTR-360
vertical blanking (VBL) GSTR-43, GST-55
vertical blanking signal GSF-180, GSF-183
vertical blanking
active modes CTR-188
vertical retraction IIGS #0
vertical scan GSTR-43
vertical sync ETR-231
vertical-count bits CTR-260
VGC (Video Graphics Controller) GST-12, GST-76
VID CTR-270,CTR-365
VID7M signal ETR-163
video GSH-7, GSH-52
video buffers GSH-89, GSH-167
video counters CTR-257-258, ETR-173-174, IIGS #39
video display CTR-257-273,CTR-359-360, PI-2, PI-6-7. See also Super Hi-80 column text PI-6, PI-8, PI-260
addresses CTR-101
circuits CTR-262
Double Hi-Res PI-7
Hi-Res PI-7
I/O firmware support CTR-116-118
codes CTR-261-269
specifications CTR-87
Apple II specifications GSH-259
locations GSH-259
mixed-mode GSH-59
Re, See display, video
display video display buffers GSTR-16
video display modes GSTR-19-24
video expansion, connector signals CTR-272-273
video expansion, output CTR-271-273
video firmware GSF-5, GSF-69-80
Video Graphics Controller (VGC)
GST-12, GST-76, GSH-7, GSH-52-57, GSH-84
Interrupt register GSH-55
Interrupt-Clear register GSH-56-57
interrupts GSH-54-57
video memory. See memory
video monitor ETR-16-17, GSH-6
composite GSH-59
RGB GSH-57, GSH-59
video output firmware
addresses CTR-324
entry points CTR-23
video output port, characteristics
CTR-86
video output signals CTR-257,CTR-270-273, ETR-185-186
video ROM ETR-5
video scan line, interrupts GST-55
video standards ETR-173
video timing IIGS #39
video
Apple II GSH-58-60
background colors GSH-57, GSH-77
border colors GSH-57, GSH-77-78
connector GSH-66
display GSH-58
display modes GSH-57
display pages GSH-67-73
Double Hi-Res GSH-59
Hi-Res GSH-59
Low-Res GSH-59
monochrome GSH-58, GSH-60
NTSC GSH-66
RAM GSH-53
RGB GSH-66
text colors GSH-57, GSH-77
video buffer GSH-89, GSH-167
VIDOUT GSF-240
VIDWAIT GSF-238
view rectangle GSTR-6-17, GSTR-10-4, GSTR-10-6-7, GSTR-10-11, GSTR-10-17, GSTR-10-30
visible region GSTR-16-14-15, GSTR-16-17, GSTR-16-152, GSTR-16-153, GSTR-16-187, GSTR-16-197, GSTR-16-208, GSTR-16-264, GSTR-17-10, GSTR-25-35, GSTR-25-47
visible region PI-81, PI-82, PI-84, PI-115
visRgn GSTR-16-15, GSTR-16-152, GSTR-16-263, GSTR-25-23, GSTR-25-28, PI-82
voices GSTR-25
volSetting GSTR-21-17, GSTR-21-37
voltage converter CTR-11-12
voltage
line ETR-158
supply ETR-159
voltages GSH-192
volume bit map P16-254, P16-258
VOLUME call P16-11, P16-44, P16-80
description of P16-128-130
volume control CTR-8,CTR-256
volume control block ProDOS #8
volume control blocks P16-47
volume name PI-208
volume of sound GSTR-24, GSTR-69
Volume registers GSH-106
volume setting GSTR-21-21, GSTR-21-26
volume(s) P16-7-8. See also file(s)
boot P16-81
directories P16-7, P16-18, P16-254
directories, directory headers P16-256-259
formatting P16-254
organization of information on P16–254–255
sizes of P16–14
VT character ETR–54
VTAB GSF–241
VTABZ GSF–79, GSF–241, CTR–113, ETR–68

W

WAIT routine Miscellaneous #12, ETR–226, GSF–243
WaitMoveUp GSTR–7–14, GSTR–7–49
WAPT (work area pointer table) GSTR–A–4, GSTR–A–10
warm-start reset ETR–95
interrupts GST–55
wform GIGS #19
wform buffer IIGS #23
wform envelopes IIGS #23
wvList IIGS #19
waveSize GSTR–21–17, GSTR–21–37
waveStart GSTR–21–17, GSTR–21–37
wvetable GSH–98, GSH–102, GSH–107
Wvetable Pointer registers GSH–108–109
Wvetable Size registers GSH–107
wCalcRgns GSTR–25–25, GSTR–25–140
wClickCalled GSTR–25–123, GSTR–25–140
wClosedNDA GSTR–25–122, GSTR–25–140
wContRgn GSTR–25–16, GSTR–25–142
wControls GSTR–25–16, GSTR–25–142
wDispose GSTR–25–25, GSTR–25–140
wDraw GSTR–25–25, GSTR–25–140
wDrawFrame GSTR–25–27
wedge GSTR–16–24
wedges PI–91
Western Spanish keyboard CTR–380–381
wFrame IIGS #3, Pl–109
wFrameCtrls GSTR–25–16, GSTR–25–142
wGrow GSTR–25–25
wHasisOnly GSTR–25–139
wHAxisOnly GSTR–25–7–6, GSTR–7–14, GSTR–7–43, GSTR–7–51, Pl–70
where GSTR–7–6, GSTR–7–38, GSTR–7–43, GSTR–7–51, PI–70
wHit GSTR–25–25, GSTR–25–140
white GSTR–16–275
wHitFrame GSTR–25–126
widMaxSize GSTR–16–226, GSTR–16–274
width GSTR–16–13, GSTR–16–277, Pi–80
WindBootInit GSTR–25–32
WindDragRect GSTR–25–133–134
windTables IIGS #42
WindNewRes GSTR–25–135, IIGS #4
window GSTR–25–1
control GSTR–4–8
dialog GSTR–6–7
window color table GSTR–25–142
window colors GSTR–25–17–20
window content definition procedures PI–51
window controls GSTR–25–6–7
window drawing
window events GSTR–65, Pl–51, PI–72
HodgePodge and PI–56–57, Pl–72
window global flag GSTR–25–136–137
window global mask GSTR–25–137
window information bar GSTR–25–20, IIGS #3
window list PI–154
constants GSTR–25–139–141
data structures GSTR–25–142–143
error codes GSTR–25–144
shutdown routine GSTR–25–33
startup routine GSTR–25–32
status routine GSTR–25–34
using GSTR–25–10–11
version number routine GSTR–25–33
window menu bar GSTR–13–5, PI–147
window origin GSTR–25–29
resetting PI–120
window record definition IIGS #42
window records Pl–109
window size box GSTR–25–19
window title bar color GSTR–25–19
X
X command  CTR–157, CTR–171, GSF–50
x flag  GSF–37, P16–64
changing GSF–60
  system interrupt handler GSF–181
X0  CTR–243, CTR–284
X0Edge switch  CTR–189
X1  CTR–284
X2Fix  GSTR–9–40
X2Frac  GSTR–9–41
XBA  GSF–18
xDivide  GSTR–3–24, GSTR–3–29
XInt  CTR–190, CTR–354
xMultiply  GSTR–3–24, GSTR–3–29
XOFF  GSF–85, GSF–89, GSF–95
xOffset  GSTR–3–24, GSTR–3–29
XON  GSF–95, GSF–89, GSF–95
XON/XOFF handshaking  GSF–34, GSF–36
XON/XOFF protocol  CTR–171
xorMItemHilite  GSTR–13–78, GSTR–13–87
xorRgn  GSTR–16–273
xorTitleHilite  GSTR–13–72

Y
changing GSF–60
  system interrupt handler GSF–181
Y0  CTR–243, CTR–284
Y0Edge switch  CTR–190
Y1  CTR–284
yDivide  GSTR–3–24, GSTR–3–29
yellow  GSTR–16–275
YInt  CTR–190, CTR–354
yMultiply  GSTR–3–24, GSTR–3–29
yOffset  GSTR–3–24, GSTR–3–29

Z
Z command  CTR–157, CTR–165, CTR–171
Zap command  GSF–34, GSF–87
zero-crossing byte  IGS #11
zeroSize  GSTR–16–226, GSTR–16–274
ZIDBYTE  GSF–239
ZIDBYTE2  GSF–238
Zilog 8530 Serial Communications Controller chip  GSF–82, GSF–6, GSF–33, GSF–39
ZMODE  GSF–257
zoomed window size  GSTR–25–74, GSTR–25–112